



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

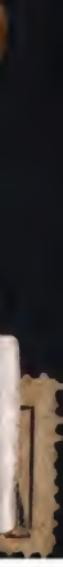
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



A

6560



UNIVERSIDAD COMPLUTENSE



5322815430

- Allison's (Miss M. A.) First Lessons in English Grammar. With Questions. 19th edit. 18mo. 9d. sewed; 1s. cloth.
- Allison's (Miss M. A.) Child's French Friend ; Being Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabulary. 11th edit. 18mo. 2s. cloth.
- Allison's La Petite Française ; A Companion to the above. 5th edition. 18mo. 2s. cloth.
- Baldwin's History of England, For the use of Schools. New edit. with Portraits. 12mo. 3s. 6d. roan.
- Baldwin's Outlines of English History, For Children from 4 to 8 yrs. with Engravings. Newed., 18mo. 1s. cl. Mimp.
- Beatson's Exercises in Greek Iambic Verse. Eighth Edition. 12mo. 3s. cloth.
- Bellenger's French and English Conversation ; 23rd edition, revised and improved. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Bland's Elements of Latin Hexameters, & Pentameters. New edit. revised, by the Rev. G.C. Rowden, D.C.L. 12mo. 3s. cloth.
- Bond's Concise View of Ancient Geography ; 4th edit. 7 Maps, colored, 2 parts, 4s. 6d. sewed.
- Bosworth's Rudiments of Greek Grammar, On the Eton plan, with the Quantities & Eng. notes, 5th ed. 12mo. 4s. cl.
- Bosworth's Introduction to Latin Construing ; 6th edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Bosworth's Latin Construing ; Lessons from Classical Authors. 5th edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Bruce's Introduction to Geography and Astronomy ; With the use of the Globes. 12th edit. 30 Woodcuts. 12mo. 5s. roan. Key to the Problems in ditto. 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.
- Bruce's Astronomy; an Introduction to the Use of the Globes; from the above. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth. Key to ditto, 2s. 6d.
- Butler's (Wm.) Arithmetical Questions ; For the use of Young Ladies. 14th Edition, 12mo. 6s. roan.
- Butler's (J. O.) Geography of the Globe ; with Problems & Questions. By J. Rowbotham. 11th ed. 12mo. 4s. 6d. roan.
- Cæsaris de Bello Gallico et Civilis Commentarii. By Duncan ; Index by Christison. New edit. With Maps. 12mo. 4s. roan.
- Cæsar de Bello Civilis. Reprinted from the above. For the Use of Students. 12mo. 1s. 6d. sewed.
- Carey's Latin Versification Simplified ; 5th edition. 12mo. 2s. cloth.
- Ciceronis de Officiis Libri Tres ; Ex Orellii Recensione edidit G. Ferguson, A.M. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

SCHOOL BOOKS PUBLISHED BY SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.

- Cobbins Grammatical and Pronouncing Spelling  
Book. 14th edition, with a fine Frontispiece, 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.
- Cobbins Classical English Vocabulary ;  
With the Etymology and Pronunciation, 6th edit. 12mo. 3s. roan.
- Cobbins Instructive Reader :  
With Cuts on an original Plan, & Questions. 6th ed. 12mo. 2s. 6d. roan.
- Comstock's System of Natural Philosophy ; by Lees.  
With Woodcuts. Carefully revised. New Edition, 18mo. 3s. 6d. roan.
- Crabb's English Synonymes Explained ;  
With an Index to the Words. 14th edition. 8vo. 15s. cloth.
- Crombie's Etymology and Syntax  
of the English Language. 8th edit. 8vo. 7s. 6d. cloth.
- Crombie's Gymnasium,  
Sive Symbola Critica. Abridged by the Author. 7th edit. 12mo. 6s. cl.
- Edwards' Accented Eton Latin Grammar,  
30th edition, revised and corrected, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Edwards' Eton Latin Accidence ;  
With the Stress and Quantities. 16th edit. 12mo. 1s. cloth.
- Edwards' Latin Delectus ;  
Or, First Lessons in Construing. 13th edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Edwards' Sententiae Selectae :  
Third Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Edwards' Exempla Græca Minora ;  
With an English & Greek Vocabulary. 2nd edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Edwards' Greek Delectus ;  
First Lessons in Greek Construing. 6th edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.
- Eton Greek Grammar ; literally translated  
into English, by the Rev. H. J. Tayler, B.D. with Notes. 12mo. 4s. cl.
- Goodacre's Arithmetic ; by Maynard;  
Adapted to different Classes of Learners. 10th Edition, 12mo. 4s. roan.
- Grandineau's Conversations Familières ;  
For the use of Young Ladies. 13th edition. 12mo. 3s. cloth.
- Greig's Young Ladies' New Guide to Arithmetic ;  
Revised and corrected, by J. Reynolds. Roy. 18mo. 2s. cloth.
- Guy's (Joseph) New British Primer ;  
29th edition, 18mo. 6d. half-bound.
- Guy's (Joseph) New British Spelling Book ;  
With Cuts after Harvey. New edition, 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.
- Guy's (Joseph) New British Expositor ;  
16th edition, 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.
- Guy's (Joseph) New British Reader ;  
13th edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. roan.
- Guy's (Joseph) School Geography ;  
Seven Maps. 26th edition, royal 18mo. 3s. red sheep.
- Guy's (Joseph) School Arithmetic ;  
30th edition, 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Y-3-3

R.219285

FA  
7355

HENRY'S

# FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

BY THE LATE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

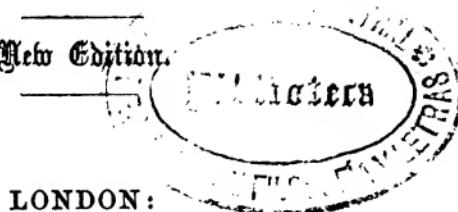
RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

---

He shall be brought past the wearisome bitterness of his  
learning.—LILY.

New Edition.



LONDON:

RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE;  
& SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.



## P R E F A C E

### TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THE title of this little work was suggested by Mrs. Marcet's '*Mary's Grammar*.' The object of it is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning the study of his Accidence. With this view, I have at first confined myself to the third person singular of a few tenses, and to *one* case of a noun: a plan suggested by an able writer in the Quarterly Journal of Education.

The principles of *imitation* and *frequent repetition* are acted upon, as in a larger work which I have just published; and the principal difficulties of the language (the *accusative* with the *infinitive*; the use of the *participle in dus*, &c.) are, it is hoped, fully explained, and illustrated by a sufficient number of examples.

T. K. A.

---

To the third edition I have added additional construing lessons on the principal conjunctions, and on the translation of participles.

T. K. A.

## A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

1. The accent or stress is *always* on the *penultimate* (the last syllable but one), or the *antepenultimate* (the last syllable but two).
2. If the penultimate is long, the stress is upon it; if short, it is on the *antepenultimate*.
3. *E* final is never *e mute*; in other words, it always constitutes a *syllable* with a preceding consonant (or consonants). (Thus *ma-re.*)
4. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s, j*) respectively before *e* (with *æ, œ*), and *i*.
5. *Qu, gu*, are pronounced respectively like *kw, gw* (*antiquus = anti-kwus; sanguis = sangwus*).

---

Obs. Numerals above the line refer to the *Questions* when they are followed by a *curre*; to the *Table of Differences*, when not.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
1. On forming the accusative case . . . . .	8
2. On forming the 3rd pers. sing. of three tenses in 1st conjug. . . . .	10
3. _____ in 2nd conjug. . . . .	12
4. _____ in 3rd conjug. . . . .	ib.
5. _____ in 4th conjug. . . . .	13
6. _____ in the four conjugations . . . . .	14
7. Adjectives in <i>us</i> , <i>er</i> . . . . .	15
8. Terminations of the Genitive sing. . . . .	17
9. Genitive of <i>price</i> . . . . .	18
10. Omission of 'man,' 'thing' . . . . .	20
11. On the formation of the <i>perfect</i> . . . . .	ib.
12. Gen. with neut. adjective . . . . .	22
13. Infinitive. Gen. with <i>est</i> . . . . .	23
14. Acc. Plural . . . . .	24
15. Dative and Ablative singular. <i>Time</i> . <i>Place</i> . . . . .	25
16. Adjectives in <i>is</i> . . . . .	26
17. On the perfect of the 3rd Conjugation. Verbs whose root ends in <i>p</i> or <i>b</i> . . . . .	27
18. Terminations of the 3rd plural . . . . .	29
19. Of the nom. and gen. plural . . . . .	30
20. On finding the nom. of third Declension . . . . .	31
21. <i>Ns</i> with imperatives . . . . .	32
22. On the perf. of Verbs whose root ends in <i>c</i> , <i>g</i> , or <i>qu</i> . . . . .	34
23. _____ <i>d</i> or <i>t</i> . Dat. and Abl. plur. . . . .	35
24. Root of the perf. with lengthened (and often changed) vowel . . . . .	37
25. Abl. of price . . . . .	39
26. On distinguishing root of perf. from root of present . . . . .	40
27. The personal pronouns. Apposition . . . . .	41
28. Nominative after <i>est</i> , &c. Some tenses of <i>esse</i> . . . . .	43
29. The compounds of <i>esse</i> . . . . .	44
30. Tenses of the <i>subjunctive</i> . . . . .	46
31. English infinitive expressing a <i>purpose</i> . . . . .	47
32. <i>That</i> expressing a <i>consequence</i> after <i>such</i> , <i>so</i> , &c. <i>Summus mons</i> , &c. . . . .	48
33. Some tenses of <i>posse</i> . Interrogative Particles . . . . .	50
34. Root of <i>supine</i> . . . . .	52
35. The Participle . . . . .	54

LESSON	PAGE
36. Translation of the participle of the perf. active. The ablative absolute . . . . .	55
37. The Gerunds. <i>Occidere</i> declined . . . . .	57
38. The participle in <i>dus</i> . <i>Epistola scribenda</i> . . . . .	59
39. Translation of 'is to be cultivated,' &c. Agent after the partic. in <i>dus</i> . . . . .	61
40. Verbs that govern the dative . . . . .	62
41. Terminations of the persons . . . . .	64
42. The pronoun 'is.' Conditional Sentences . . . . .	65
43. <i>Scribendum est mihi</i> . . . . .	67
44. Subj. pres. and imperf. of <i>esse</i> . . . . .	68
45. <i>Credendum est Caio</i> . . . . .	69
46. <i>Colenda est virtus</i> . . . . .	71
47. The Infinitive Mood . . . . .	73
48. Passive Forms . . . . .	75
49. <i>Qui, quæ, quod. Mihi creditur, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	76
50. DepONENT Verbs . . . . .	78
51. The Comparative and Superlative . . . . .	80
52. Prepositions . . . . .	82
53. Translation of 'may,' 'might' . . . . .	83
54. Translation of 'ought' . . . . .	85
55. Ablative denoting the measure of excess or defect. <i>Quo—eo;</i> <i>quanto—tanto</i> . . . . .	87
56. <i>Quo</i> . . . . .	88
57. <i>Pœnitet, pudet, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	89

## (ADDITIONAL CONSTRUING LESSONS.)

58. <i>Et—et; quum—tum, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	91
59. <i>Aut; vel; sive (scu), &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	92
60. <i>At, sed, tamen, &amp;c. (adversatives)</i> . . . . .	93
61. <i>Nam, igitur, &amp;c. (causals)</i> . . . . .	ib.
62. <i>Ut</i> . . . . .	94
63. <i>Nē</i> . . . . .	95
64. <i>Quin</i> . . . . .	96
65. <i>Quoniam.</i> . . . . .	97
66. <i>Vereor ne: vereor ut</i> . . . . .	98
67. Interrogatives . . . . .	99
68. _____ in dependent sentences . . . . .	100
69. Double questions . . . . .	ib.
70. Conjunctions that always take subj. . . . .	102
71—78. On construing participles by accessory sentences	102—108
Sketch of the Accidence: with <i>Tables, Vocabularies, &amp;c.</i>	109
Genders . . . . .	124
Questions . . . . .	129
Table of Differences of Idiom . . . . .	133
Index I. English . . . . .	135
— II. Latin . . . . .	143
Hints for finding root of present from root of perfect }	143

# HENRY'S

## FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

---

Words in *Italics*, in an exercise, are phrases that are not to be translated word for word ; or about which something has been taught that should be remembered.

---

---

### Lesson 1.

1. WHERE we put a preposition before a noun, the Romans often used *no preposition*, but changed the end of the word.

2. Thus, '*mensa*' being '*a table*' ; '*mensæ*' is '*of a table*' ; '*mensā*' '*BY a table*' , and so on.

3. A word so altered is called *a case* of that word ; thus *mensæ* is called the *genitive case* of *mensa* ; and so on.

4. The unaltered word is said to be in the *nominative case*, though it is not strictly a case.

5. All nouns do not form their cases exactly in the same way.

As there are five principal ways of forming the cases of a noun, nouns are divided into *five classes*, each class being called a *declension*.

6. (a) Nouns that end in *a* and make their genitive in *æ*, are of the *first declension*.

(b) Nouns that end in *us*, *er*, *um*, and make their genitives in *i*, are of the *second declension*.

(c) Nouns in *us* that make their genitive in *is*,

and all nouns in *u*, are of the *fourth declension*.

- (d) Nouns that end in *es* and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth declension*.
- (e) Nouns with *any ending* not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those with an ending belonging to some other declension, but with a *genitive* in 'is,' belong to the *third declension*<sup>a</sup>.

### 7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.

The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive verbs*, and many *prepositions*.

8. A *transitive verb* is one that gives no *complete meaning* till some person or thing is mentioned *to whom* or *which* the action was done.

He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

1.	2. 4.	3. 5.
am	um	em.

But ~~(if)~~ If a noun is *neuter*, its accusative is the *unaltered word*<sup>b</sup>.

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*,

### \* TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS.

Nouns that end in a us, er, um us, u es	Genitive æ i ūs ei	are of the first . . second . . fourth . . . fifth	Declension.
Those with <i>any other ending</i> , or with these if their gen. end in 'is,'	is	. . . third	

<sup>a</sup> In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*. Hence in Latin, *gender*, as belonging to *things*, has nothing to do with *sex*.

after the endings of the nominative, as set down in the table (in 6, note a), are thrown away. But to this there are two exceptions :—

- (1) The *case-endings* (or ‘*terminations*’) of nouns of the second in *er*, are added on thus : *e* is *dropt*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. *agr-um*. (Sometimes however the *e* is kept ; as *puer*, Acc. *puer-um*.)
- (2) The *terminations* of the *third* are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the nominative being *lapis*.
- (3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be got from the genitive by throwing away ‘*is*.’

### *Exercise 1.*

[Obs. *m.*, *f.*, *n.* stand for *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. *G.* stands for *genitive*.]

11. Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

### VOCABULARY 1.

		KEY-WORDS <sup>c</sup> .
Crown,	corōna	(coronation).
Island,	insūla	(insular).
Friend,	amicus, <i>G.</i> amici	(amicable).
Umpire,	arbīter, <i>G.</i> arbitr-i	(arbitration).
Leaf,	folium, <i>G.</i> folii	(foliage).
Garden,	hortus, <i>G.</i> horti	(horticulture).
Law,	lex, <i>G.</i> legis	(legal).
Chariot,	currus, <i>G.</i> currūs	(curriole).
Face,	facies, <i>G.</i> faciēi.	
Dust,	pulvis, <i>G.</i> pulvēr-is	(pulverize).
Time,	tempus, <i>G.</i> tempōr-is, neut.	(temporal).
Oak,	quercus, <i>G.</i> quercūs.	
Horn, cornu	cornu	(cornuopia).

<sup>c</sup> That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a key to their meaning.

## Lesson 2.

12. The *persons* of the Latin verb are distinguished by their *endings* (as think-*est* and think-*s* are in English). But in Latin *all* the persons have different endings ; and the pronoun *I*, *thou*, &c. is generally left out, because the *ending* of the verb *tells* the person meant.

(*Verbs whose infinitives end in are.*)

3. By throwing off *are* you get the root.

14. By adding *at* to the root you get the third person singular of the *present* tense : by adding *abat*, the third person singular of the *imperfect* tense : by adding *abit*, the third person singular of the *future* tense.

(a) *Amare, to love* : root *am*.

*am-ăt, loves* ; *is loving* ; or *does love*.

*am-ăbăt, was loving*.

*am-ăbit, will love*.

## 15. VOCABULARY 2.

		KEY-WORDS.
To praise,	laud-are	( <i>laudatory</i> ).
To swear,	jür-are	( <i>ad-jure</i> ).
To plough,	är-are	( <i>arable</i> ).
To dance,	salt-are.	
To avoid,	vit-are	( <i>in-e-ritable</i> ).
To build,	ædific-äre	( <i>edification</i> *).
Husbandman,	agricöla.	
Wall,	murus, i	( <i>a mural crown</i> †).
Death,	mors, G. mort-is	( <i>mortal</i> ).
Boy,	puer, G. puëri (keeps e)—	( <i>puerile</i> ).
Way ; road,	via	( <i>de-vious</i> ).
To show, or point out,	monstr-äre	( <i>de-monstrate</i> ).
Dragon,	draco, G. dracö-n-is.	
Voice,	vox, G. vōc-is	( <i>vocal</i> ).
Fox,	vulpes, G. vulp-is.	
Not,	non (before the verb).	

\* This word means '*the building a man up*' in religious knowledge and practice : *building on the foundation of faith*.

† A crown given to the soldier who first mounted the *walls* of a besieged city.

Model sentence. (Obs. The accusative is placed before the verb.)

16. Servius imperium administrat.  
Servius (the) government administers.

17. (☞ The Latin language has no article<sup>a</sup>.

### *Exercise 2.*

18. [Order: Nom. Acc. Verb.]

Balbus is-building a wall. The boy shows the road. Caius will build a wall. The boy will show the road. The husbandman will plough. Caius was ploughing. Caius will praise the boy. The boy will avoid death. He was swearing. The boy dances. The boy will dance. The girl was dancing. The boy will avoid the fox. The fox was avoiding the boy.

*☞* When there is a 'not,' the present with 'does' must be used: and the auxiliary verb (*does*, *will*, *shall*, &c.) must stand before the 'not.'

Puer murum ædificabat. Caius puellam laudat. Balbus jurabit. Agricola arat. Balbus puerum vitabit. Puer mortem vitabit. Puerum non laudat.

laudat, saltabat, laudabat; jurat, ædificabit, vitat, saltabat, vitabit, vitabat; laudabit, saltat, jurat, jurat, monstrabat, arabit; monstrat, ædificat, vitabit.

### *Lesson 3.*

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ēre.)

#### 19. VOCABULARY 3.

		KEY-WOR <sub>D</sub> S.
To fear,	tim-ēre	(timid).
To see,	vid-ēre	(pro-side).
To laugh,	rid-ēre	(de-side).
To laugh-at,		
To hold,	tēn-ēre	(a ten-ant).
To frighten,	terr-ēre	(terri-fy).
To teach,	dōc-ēre	(doo-tor).

<sup>a</sup> That is, no word for *a* or *the*.

\* *Balbus* and *Caius* are the Latin names. Gen. *Balbi*, *Caii*.

20. The root is got by throwing off *ere*.  
 21. The endings of the third persons singular are,  
 (pres.)           (imperf.)           (fut.)  
 et,               ēbat,               ēbit.

### *Exercise 3.*

22. A christian does not fear death. The boy will fear the dragon. The voice will frighten the boy. The boy was holding the fox. The boy will hold the dragon. Balbus was laughing-at the boy. He was building a wall. Caius will plough. He swears. A christian will not fear death. Balbus was showing the way.

timet, ridēbit, terrēbat; tenet, videt, vidēbit.  
 ridēbat, tenēbat, timet; timēbit, terret, timēbat.  
*Puer vulpem non timet.*   *Draco puerum terrēbit.*  
*Balbus dracōnem tenēbat.*   *Puella viam monstrābat.*  
*Puer puellam ridet.*   *Caius puerum docēbat.*

### *Lesson 4.*

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ere*.)

#### 23. VOCABULARY 4.

		KEY-WORDS.
To neglect, disregard,	neglīg-ēre	(negligent).
To shut,	claud-ēre.	
To write,	scrib-ēre	(de-scribe).
To slay,	occid-ēre.	
To learn,	disc-ēre.	
To lead,	dūc-ēre	(ad-duce).
Gate,	porta	(porter).
Letter,	epistōla	(epistle).
Slave,	servus	(servile).
Master,	dominus	(domineer).

24. The root is got by throwing off *ere*, and the terminations of the third persons singular are,

(pres.)           (imperf.)           (fut.)  
 it,               ēbat,               ēbit.

### *Exercise 4.*

25. The slave will shut the gate. The girl was writing a letter. Balbus disregards the voice. The

boy will learn. Caius was learning. The girl will show the garden. The master will praise (his) slave. The slave was showing the way. The slave will not fear death. The slave will plough.

discit, claudit, claudēbat; negliget, scribit, sribet, claudet, discēbat, scribet; occidit, disct, dicit.

Servus dominum occidit. Puer discēbat. Servus portam claudēbat. Epistōlam scribet. Jurābit. Puella puerum laudābat. Puella mortem vitābit. Puer vulpem non timēbit. Christianus mortem non timet.

### Lesson 5.

(*Verbs whose infinitives end in ire.*)

#### 26. VOCABULARY 5.

To hear,	aud-ire	(audi-ble).
To feel,	sent-ire	(pre-senti-ment).
To perceive,		
To open,	apēr-ire.	
To uncover,		
To bind,	vinc-ire.	
Pain,		
Sorrow,	dolor, G. dolōr-is, maso.	(dolor-ous).
Head,	caput, G. capūt-is, neut.	(capit-al).

27. The root is got by throwing away *ire*, and the endings of the third persons singular are,

(pres.)	(imperf.)	(fut.)
it,	iēbat,	iet.

### Exercise 5.

28. The boy hears a voice. Balbus will feel pain. The slave uncovers his head. The girl will open the letter. Balbus will bind (his\*) head. Caius will hear the voice. Caius was uncovering (his) head. Balbus will write the letter. The master neglects (his) slave. vinciebat, sentiet, audiet; sentit, audiebat, aperit, audit, aperiebat, sentiet; vincit, audit, sentiebat.

Puer caput vinciebat. Balbus vocem audiet. Caius dolorem vitabit. Puella dolorem sentiebat. Servus

\* Not to be translated.

epistōlam scribēbat. Caius servum laudābat. Servus murum sēdificat. Servus currum monstrābit.

---

### Lesson 6.

29. The forms we have now gone through are the four classes (or *conjugations* as they are called) of verbs. They are distinguished by the endings of the infinitive mood.

- 30. (a) Verbs whose infinitives end in *āre*, are of the *first conjugation*, and their favorite vowel is *long a*.
- (b) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ēre*, are of the *second conjugation*, and their favorite vowel is *long e*.
- (c) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ōre*, are of the *third conjugation*, and their favorite vowels are *short e* and *short i*.
- (d) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *īre*, are of the *fourth conjugation*, and their favorite vowel is *long i*.

### 31. Terminations of the Infinitive.

1 conjug.	2 conjug.	3 conjug.	4 conjug.
(favorite vowel ā)	(fav. vowel ē)	(fav. vowels ē, ī)	(fav. vowel ī)
Infin.:—āre	ēre	ōre	īre

### 32. Third persons of three tenses.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	āt	ēt	ōt	īt
Imperf.,	ābāt	ēbāt	ōbāt	ībāt
Future,	ābīt	ēbīt	ōt	īt

### 33. VOCABULARY 6.

To fight,	pugn-are	( <i>pugn-acious</i> ).
To sing,	cant-are	( <i>canto</i> ).
To play,	lūd-ēre	( <i>de-lude</i> ).
To cry out,	clām-are	( <i>clam-our</i> ).
To answer,	respond-ēre	( <i>respond</i> ).
To sin,	pecc-are	( <i>pecc-ant</i> ).
To run,	curr-ēre	( <i>curr-icle</i> ).
To hope for,	spērare	( <i>de-sper-ate</i> ).

*Exercise 6.*

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husband-man was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.

Servus mortem sperābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnabat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors Christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

---

*Lesson 7.*

(*Adjectives in us, er.*)

**35. VOCABULARY 7.**

To finish	fīn-īre.	
Labour,	lāber, <i>G.</i> labōr-is.	
Mother,	māter, <i>G.</i> matr-is	(maternal).
Father,	pāter, <i>G.</i> patr-is	(paternal).
To bury,	sepēl-īre	(sepulture).
Dead,	mortuus, mortua, mortuum.	
Son,	filius, <i>G.</i> filii	(famil).
Snake,	anguis, anguis, <i>m.</i> (pronounced angwɪs).	
To find,	repēr-īre	(repertory).
Money,	pecunia	(peouniary).
Sum-of-money,		
Master,	{ magister, <i>G.</i> magistr-i, a master who teaches domīnus, <i>G.</i> i, a master who owns }	(magisterial). (domineer).
To rouse-up, or awaken,	{ excit-āre	(excitement).
Mine,	meus, mea, meum.	
Good,	bonus, bona, bonum.	
His, her, its, theirs, suus, sua, suum ; when the person whose the thing is, is the nominative to the verb.		

**36. ♂ Adjectives in us, er, have a masculine, a**

*feminine*, and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

- The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i.* (Decl. ii.)  
 — feminine — *a*; G. *ω.* (Decl. i.)  
 — neuter — *um*; G. *i.* (Decl. ii.)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus* (whose *sem.* is *bona*; *neut. bonum*), if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*<sup>f</sup>; and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken<sup>g</sup>.

38. *Mulier ancillam suam excitat.*  
*The woman maid her awakens.*

OBS. Except with these little words *meus*, *suis*, &c. the adjective generally stands before its substantive. '*Bonus puer*,' a good boy.

[*Ancillam suam* :—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

<sup>f</sup> See 9, b.

<sup>g</sup> TABLE by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined.

I. DECL. all *feminine*, except *POETA* (poet), and other designations of *men*.

II. DECL. { *us*, *er*, *masouline*: except, *humus*, *domus*, (*sem.*) and  
 a few more.  
*um*, *neuter*.

IV. DECL. { *us*, *masouline*, except *manus* (*sem.*) and a few more.  
*u*, *neuter*.

V. DECL. { *es*, *sem.* (*DIES* masculine, but sometimes *sem.* in singular).

III. DECL. Masc. term.	Fem. term.	Neut. term.
ER, OR, OS,	do, go, io,	<i>o, a, t, e, l, n,</i>
ES increasing *,	as, is, aus,	<i>ar, ur, us,</i>
o, when not do,	x,	(But <i>us</i> with long <i>u</i> , in words of more than one syll. is <i>sem.</i> )
go, io,	es not increasing, s after a consonant.	

OBS. *Masc.* endings are in *capitals*; *fem.* in *common type*; *neut.* in *Italics*.—There are many exceptions in the third. See p. 124.

\* That is, having in the genitive a *syllable more* than in the nominative.

*Exercise 7.*

39. The father buries (his) dead son. The husbandman finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labour. The girl was finishing her labour. The master will show his garden. The father will praise (his) good son.

*Pater filium suum docēbat. Agricōla anguem non timēbit. Caius legem negliget. Christiānus pecuniam negligit. Mortuum agricōlam sepeliet. Pater meus vocem meam non negliget.*

---

*Lesson 8.*

40. The following are the *genitive* terminations of the five declensions:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
æ	i	is	ūs	ei.

- (1) In the Genitive of the fourth *ūs* is for *uis*.  
 (2) In the Genitive of the fifth, the *e* is long when it follows a vowel; short when it does not. (*Faciēi, fidēi*)

**41. VOCABULARY 8.**

Through,	per,	governs accusative.
To walk,	ambūlare	(per-anubulat <sup>r</sup> ).
To call,	vocare	(vocation).
Poet,	poēta.	
To overturn,	evertēre (the first is its own meaning: the second the word we should use).	
To pull-down,		
House,	domus, ūs, f.	(domestic).
Body,	corpūs, corpōr-is, n.	(corporal punishment).
Daughter,	filia, G. æ, f.	
Great,	magnum	(magnitude).
Little,	parvus.	
Small,		

41\*. Ipse Sullæ domum evertit.  
*He-himself Sulla's house pulls-down*  
 (properly, overturns).

Obs. 45. The governed genitive stands first, unless the governing noun is emphatic. When the governing noun is to stand before its genitive, it will have an accent after it (Thus; 'festival').

### *Exercise 8.*

42. The slave shuts the gate of the city. He himself will not pull down his friend's house. The father will not disregard the voice of his son. The father is burying the body of (his) dead son. The boy was pointing-out the snake's body. My mother was praising the poet's daughter. The good boy was walking through the city. My father will call the husbandman's daughter. The poet was holding the queen's crown.

*Filius patris sui mortem vindicābit. Pater filii sui vocem non negliget. Leo asinum dilaniat. Servus domini sui mortem vindicābat. Regis sceptrum vidēbit. Agricōla per urbem ambulabit.*

### *Lesson 9.*

Say the termination of the tenses (32). Give the accusative endings (9). Give the genitive endings (40).

### **43. VOCABULARY 9.**

At nothing,	<i>nihilī</i> (the genitive of <i>nūllum</i> , which is only used in some particular phrases).
To value,	<i>estimāre</i> ( <i>estimation</i> ).
At a great (price),	<i>magni</i> *.
At a high (price),	<i>magni</i> *.
At a little (price),	<i>parvi</i> *.
At a low (price),	<i>parvi</i> <i>estimare</i> .
To think little of,	<i>parvi</i> <i>estimare</i> .
Queen,	<i>regina</i> .
King,	<i>rex</i> , <i>G. rēg-is</i> ( <i>regal</i> ).
Sceptre,	<i>sceptrum</i> .
Labour,	<i>labor</i> , <i>G. labōr-is</i> .
True, real,	<i>vērus</i> ( <i>erily</i> ).
Virtue,	<i>virtūs</i> , <i>G. virtūt-is</i> .
To tear-to-pieces,	<i>dilaniāre</i> .
An ass,	<i>asinus</i> , <i>G. asīni</i> .
To avenge,	<i>vindīcāre</i> ( <i>vindictive</i> ).
Lion,	<i>leo</i> , <i>G. leōnis</i> .

\* These are genitives, *price* being understood.

44. With some words the *price* or *value* is put in the *genitive*.

Sapiens virtūtem magni aestimat.  
*The wise man virtue at a great (price) values.*

45. Magna regis corona, *the king's great crown.*  
 Magna boni regis corona, *the good king's great crown.*

Imitate this order; *adj. gen. subst.*

### Exercise 9.

46. He disregards his slave's great labour. He sees a great snake. The boy was avoiding the snake's great body. He is avoiding the great snake's great body. The master was rousing up his slave. He will feel great sorrow. The poet will feel real sorrow. The father will not neglect the sorrow of his son. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*. The master *thinks little* of the labour of his slave. The father will value my labour *at a great (price)*.

Caius amici sui labōrem parvi aestimat. Pater labōrem meum magni aestimat. Leo asini corpus dilaniabat. Mater laudabat filiam. Vulpes leōnem timet. Boni pueri caput aperiebat. Dominus servi sui epistōlam aperiet. Magnam urbis portam clau-debat. Servus puerum vocabit.

### Lesson 10.

#### 47. VOCABULARY 10.

Very great, greatest,	maximus.
At a very great (price),	} maximi.
At a very high (price),	
Avarice,	avaritia <sup>h.</sup> .
Unlearned,	indocetus.
Avaricious; greedy,	avārus.
Wise,	sapiens, sapientis      ( <i>sapient</i> ).
Wisdom,	sapientia.

<sup>h</sup> Obs. Nouns in *ia*, *tia*, *tas*, and *tūdo* are abstract nouns, such as the names of *virtues*, *vices*, *dispositions*, *feelings*, &c.

To praise,  
Impious,                  laudāre  
                              impius.                  (*laudatory*).

48. Avārus                  maxīmi  
*The avaricious* (man)      *at a very great* (price)  
æstīmat pecuniam.  
*values*      *money.*

When the noun meant is *man*, *woman*, or *thing*, it is often left out in Latin. If *man* is meant, the adjective must, of course, be *masculine*; if *woman*, *feminine*; if *thing*, *neuter*.

### *Exercise 10.*

(Ask questions from 1—4, p. 129.)

49. The avaricious (man) values<sup>3</sup> virtue at-a-low-price. He was pulling down the avaricious (man's) house. He will avenge the death of the wise (man). The wise (man) values virtue at-a-very-great (price). The impious (man) will fear death. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. The poet will build a great house. The poet's daughter was walking through the great city. The unlearned (man) laughs-at the poet. The true poet will laugh-at the unlearned (man).

Christiānus pecuniam parvi æstimābit<sup>3</sup>. Impii domum evertet. Indoctus sapientiam parvi æstīmat. Caius sapientiam laudābit. Amīci laudat sapientiam. Christiānus avaritiam vitābit. Mater bonam filiam laudabat. Magnani regis corōnam videbit. Leo dilaniabit as̄num. Puer magnam quercum monstrabit. Servus domīni sui hortum monstrabat.

### *Lesson 11.*

#### *On the formation of the Perfect.*

50. The perfect has the same ending in all the conjugations; but this one ending is added on to a *par-*

*ticular root<sup>1</sup>*, that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv*, *ū*, and *īv*, respectively, to the root of the present.

<i>Thus from</i>	am-āre	mon-ēre	aud-īre
<i>(Root of present)</i>	am-	mon-	aud-
<i>(Root of perfect)</i>	amāv-	monū-	audīv-

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

<i>Perfect,</i>	it,	<i>root of the perfect.</i>
<i>Pluperfect,</i>	ērat,	
<i>Future perfect,</i>	ērit,	

53. Find the roots of the perfect for *cant-āre*, *terr-ēre*, *doc-ēre*, *sepel-īre*.

### *Exercise 11.*

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price.

Juravērat. Agricōla aravērit. Vulpes terruērit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavērat. Servus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepeliērat. Magnām poētæ sapientiam parvi æstimavit. Veram virtutem magni æstimavērat.

### *Lesson 12.*

#### *55. VOCABULARY 11.*

Bad,	mālus.	Evil, malum ( <i>neut. adj.</i> ).
Something,	aliquid (n.).	

<sup>1</sup> By a root is here meant that part of a word which is found in all the cases or tenses spoken of.

How much,	quantus, quanta, quantum	( <i>quantity</i> ).
Pleasure,	voluptas, <i>G.</i> voluptatis	( <i>voluptuary</i> ).
Lose,	amittēre.	
Unwilling,	invitus (to be translated, ' <i>unwillingly</i> ').	
Figure,	figūra.	
To have,	habēre.	
Stability,	stabilitas.	
To condemn,	damnāre.	
Unlearned,	īdoctus.	
Industry,	industria.	

56. **Figūra nihil habet stabilitatis.**  
*The figure nothing has of stability (has no stability).*

Aliquid temporis	{ something of time. ( <i>Lat.</i> ) { (some time.) ( <i>Eng.</i> )
Multum boni <sup>k</sup>	{ much of good. ( <i>Lat.</i> ) { (much good.) ( <i>Eng.</i> )
Quantum voluptatis <sup>l</sup>	{ how much of pleasure. ( <i>Lat.</i> ) { (how much pleasure.) ( <i>Eng.</i> )

57. (*Eng.*) He does it *unwillingly* (adv.).  
*(Lat.)* He *unwillingly* does it (adj.).

### Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the root of *perfect* from *hab-ēre*, *vit-āre*, *dilani-āre*, *laud-āre*.

58. The boy will lose *some time*. *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose<sup>m</sup>! The figure had *no stability*. He avoided *much evil*. The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly<sup>n</sup>.

Servus viam monstr-av-ērat. Puer mortem tim-u-it.  
 Domīnus servum suum excit-av-ērat. Aliquid temporis  
 invitus amittet. Christiānus avaritiam damnat. Quan-

<sup>k</sup> ~~NEVER~~ *Boni, mali, &c.* (the genitives of *bonus*, *malus*,) are here used as substantives.

<sup>l</sup> ~~NEVER~~ Neuter adjectives are often followed by a genitive case. These adjectives are generally such as relate to *quantity*; *indefinite numerals*, &c.

<sup>m</sup> Obs. After '*how much*' the present with '*does*' is used, and the nominative case stands between the auxiliary verb and the verb.

tum habet voluptatis sapientia! Avaritia nihil habet  
veræ voluptatis. Quantum voluptatis hab-u-erit!

---

### Lesson 13. [Questions 1—6.]

#### 59. VOCABULARY I2.

Natural-to-man,	humānus	(human).
Nobody,	nēmo, G. nemīn-is.	
To offend-against ; wrong,		
To break (a law, one's word, &c.)	viōlare	(violate).
Disgraceful,	turpis, m. f.; tarpe, n.	
Fidelity ; faith ; one's word,	fides, fidēi.	
To keep ; observe,	servāre	(pre-serve).
(One's) country,	patria, G. ae, f.	(patriotism)
To break one's word,	fidem viōlare.	
It is,	est.	
Citizen,	civis, G. cīvis.	
To command,	impērare	(imperative).
Easy,	facilis, m. f.; facile, neut.	(facility).

#### 60. Humanum est errare.

*Natural-to-man it-is to err<sup>n</sup>.*

Christiāni est nemīnem violare.

The part } of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.  
The duty }

61. To lie is<sup>o</sup> disgraceful. (*Lat.*)

*It is disgraceful to lie. (Eng.)*

62. After 'it is,' such a substantive as *part*, *duty*, *business*, *mark*, is untranslated.

In construing, when a genitive follows *est* (*erat*, *fuit*, &c.), such a substantive as *mark*, *duty*, *business*, *part*, must be supplied.

<sup>n</sup> ~~now~~ An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the nominative to the verb; and the adjective that agrees with it is then in the neuter gender.

<sup>o</sup> ~~now~~ When an infinitive mood is the nominative case to the sentence, in English we put 'it' before the verb 'is.'

This 'it,' which represents, as it were, the coming sentence, must not be translated into Latin.

It is the part                              }  
 \_\_\_\_\_ duty  
 \_\_\_\_\_ business  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a mark  
 It is of a wise man . . . . . . . . . (Lat.)

### Exercise 13.

63. It is a great *thing* not to fear death. It is a little *thing* not to fear a fox. The slave had kept his word. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gate of the city. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. It is natural to man to value money *at-a-high-price*. It is a mark of an unlearned man to value wisdom *at-a-low-price*.

Turpe est poētæ domum evertere. Humanum est peccare. *Patris* est filium suum sepelire. *Regis* est imperare. *Servi* est viam monstrare. Pater filium docuerat. Puella clamavérat. Mater filiam suam laudavérat. Caius cantavérat. Agricōla juravit. Impii (62) est virtutem *parvi* aestimare. Boni est fidem servare. Impii est fidem violare.

### Lesson 14.

64. For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns the accusative plural ends in *s*; for neuters in *ā*.

RULE. To get the *acc. plur.* from *acc. sing.*

(1) For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns, turn *um* of the 2nd into *os*: in the other declensions, turn *m* into *s*.

(2) For neuters add *a* to the *root*<sup>q</sup>.

Hence the terminations of the *acc. plur.* are,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
ās,	ōs,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.

*Obs.* The vowel before *s* is long. *Acc. plur.* of all neuters ends in *ā*.

<sup>q</sup> Sometimes *ia* must be added; for which rules will be given below.

*Exercise 14.*

65. It is disgraceful to break (one's) word. It is (the duty) of a christian to keep (his) word. It is (the part) of a christian, not to offend-against the laws of his country. The good citizen will observe the laws of his country. The master has taught the boys. It is natural-to-man to avoid pain. Balbus will break his word. The fox had frightened the boys. He disregards the labours of his slave.

Pater meus fidem servavērat. Indocti est (62) sapientiam *parvi aestimāre*<sup>8</sup>. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. CAIUS fidem suam non servāvit. Christiani est nemīnem violāre. Nemīnem violavit.

---

*Lesson 15.*

66. The remaining cases of the singular:

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Dative	æ	ō	ī	uī	eī
Ablative	ā	ō	ō	ū	ē
			some-times i*.		

67. The *Dative* is to be construed by TO or FOR. The *Ablative* is to be construed by WITH, BY, FROM. But an Ablative of time must be construed by AT or IN: an Ablative of place by AT or FROM †.

68. VOCABULARY 13.

Hand,	mānus, ūs, f.	( <i>manual</i> ).
To labour,		
To be in trouble,	lābōrare.	
To appease,	plācare	{ <i>placable</i> ).
Mind,	anim-us, i	{ <i>magn-animi-ty</i> ).
Gift,	donum	{ <i>donative</i> ).

*Exercise 15.*

The thing with which is put in the ablative.

69. The boy will show the road to the husbandman.

---

\* e is to be used, unless you are told to use i.

† From after a verb of motion.

The girl will open the letter *with* her-own hand. The boy will hear voices. Death will not terrify christians. The slave will shut the gates *for* the king. Death frightens the impious. It is natural-to-man to fear death. He will appease the boy *with* a gift. He has appeased the boy's mind. He will have appeased the boy's mind *with* a gift.

Agricōlæ est laborāre. Puer discet. Servus domini vocem timēbit. Christiāni est virtūtem laudāre. Caii anīmum dono placavērit. Iram meam dono placavērat. Puella cantābit. Puer ludēbat.

### Lesson 16.

70. Adjectives ending in *is*, have Gen. *is*, and are therefore of the *third*. They are *masculine* and *feminine*. Their neuter form is *e*, Gen. *is*, &c. ; and the ablative singular is *i\**.

### 71. VOCABULARY 14.

Rome,	Rōma.
Carthage,	Carthāgo, Carthagīn-is, f.
The space-of-two-years,	biennium.
Winter,	hiems, hiēm-is, f.
To sleep,	dormīre <span style="float: right;">(dor-mouse).</span>
Cave,	antrum.
One,	unus, una, unum <sup>r</sup> <span style="float: right;">(unit).</span>
To rest,	quiescēre <span style="float: right;">(quiescent).</span>
To chastise,	castigāre <span style="float: right;">(castigation).</span>
To remain,	mānēre.
To live,	vivēre <span style="float: right;">(re-vive).</span>
Earth,	terra <span style="float: right;">(terrestrial).</span>
Faithful,	fidēlis <span style="float: right;">(fidelity).</span>

72.	Romæ.	Tarenti.	Tibūre <sup>s</sup> .
	at Rome.	at Tarentum.	at Tiber.

\* A table of the terminations of an adj. in 'is' is given at p. 112 (16, 1).

<sup>r</sup> This word, with some others, has this peculiarity: *unus*, *una*, and *unum*, all make their *Gen.* *unius*, and their *Dat.* *uni*, instead of the regular Genitives and Datives of the first and second declensions.

<sup>s</sup> If the name of a town *where* any thing is done, be of the *first* or *second* declension, and *singular* number, it is put in the *genitive*; if not, in the *ablat*.

Caius annum unum<sup>t</sup> Cortōnē vixit.  
*Caius year one at Cortona lived.*

*Hīme ursus in antro dormit.*  
*In winter the bear in a cave sleeps.*

73. *Obs.* The preposition is not to be translated before the name of a town, or a noun of time.

(a) Before a noun of time consider, whether it tells you *when* the thing *was* (or, *is to be*) *done*; or *how long* it *lasted* (or *is to last*).

### *Exercise 16.*

74. In-winter the earth rests. My father was living at-Rome. BALBUS is-remaining at-Carthage. It is the duty' of a good citizen to remain at-Rome. In winter the bear will remain in (its) cave. He will remain at-Rome for the-space-of-two-years. He has kept his word unwillingly. It is the duty' of a father to chastise his son. The slave is walking in the garden. He is remaining at-Tibur unwillingly (57). In-the-winter, he will play in the garden.

Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābit. Pater filium castigavērat. Puer in antro dormiēbat. Lex chris-tiāna avaritiam damnavērat. Pater filium castigavērit. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Facile est, pueri animum dono placare. Puella in horto ludēbat.

### *Lesson 17.*

(On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in p or b.)

75. In these verbs the root of the *perfect* may generally be got from the root of the *present* by adding *s*.  
 ↪ But *bs* must be written *ps*.

<sup>t</sup> ~~for~~ Time when is put in the ablative; time how-long in the accusative.

76. EXAMPLES: Root of pres. *rēp*; root of perf. *reps.*  
 Root of pres. *nūb*; root of perf. *nups.*  
 (not *nubs.*)

### 77. VOCABULARY 15.

To write,	scribēre	(scribe).
To marry (of a female),	nūbēre	(nuptials) <sup>u</sup> .
To pluck ; to card ; to carp at,	carpēre.	
Wool,	lana.	
Flower,	flos, flōris	(florist).
Grape,	uva.	
Whole,	{ totus : with G. totius ; D. toti. See <i>unus</i> , p. 111 (8, 10).	
Letter,	epistōla	(epistolary).
a. Nubēre 'to marry' is followed by the dative, not by the accusative. b. A case of <i>suis</i> must be con- { his, her, its, their ; (or) strued { his own, her own, its own, their own ; according as the nominative is a 'he,' a 'she,' an 'it,' or a 'they.'		
<i>He</i> wrote it } manu sua { with his own hand. <i>She</i> wrote it } manu sua { with her own hand.		

### Exercise 17.

78. The boy was writing a letter. The girl wrote a letter. The slave had written a letter. (It) is easy (60, n) to write a letter. The girl will marry Caius. The girl was carding wool. It is the duty<sup>v</sup> of a christian to observe the laws of his country. The girl had plucked a flower. The boy will pluck the grape. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter\*.

Sapientis est virtūtem<sup>v</sup> magni æstimāre. Epistōlam Romæ scripsit. Facile est, lanam carpēre. Quantum habet voluptatis industria ! Puella epistōlam suā manu scripsit. Caius epistōlam suā manu scribēbat.

<sup>u</sup> This word properly means 'to veil:' hence 'to put on a bridal veil;' 'to marry.' It governs the dative, as meaning 'to veil for a person.'

\* In what case is time how-long put ? (p. 27, note t.)

<sup>v</sup> From *virtus*.

## Lesson 18.

*Terminations of the third plural.*

79. The *third plural* of a verb may be got from the *third singular* by changing *t* into *nt*.

(a) But this rule does not hold good of '*it*', which must be changed thus :

'*it*' must be changed *in the fourth conj. into iunt.*  
*in the perfect into . . ērunt.*  
*in 'erit' into . . . int.*  
*in other cases into . . unt\**

## Exercise 18.

## 80. Construe :

- (1) *Amat, amant: monet, monent: regit, regunt: audit, audiunt: amavit, amaverunt.*
- (2) Find the *third person plural* corresponding to each of the following forms :  
*Amābat; monēbit; regēt; rexērit; audiet; plorābit; rexit (perf.); clamavērit, clamabit; scripsit, audiet.*

## (3) Translate :

They will command. They have walked in the garden. They have written a letter. They were praising the faithful slave. They had praised the slave's fidelity. They will have sung. They will remain at Rome the whole winter. They will fear the lion. They will have chastised the slave. They will pull down the avaricious man's house. They will value money at-a-low-price. They will lose some time. Wisdom has much pleasure. They will wrong nobody. They have wronged nobody. It is the duty of a christian to avoid avarice. They will appease the girl's anger. They were writing letters.

\* Thus, *sepel-īt,* *sepel-iunt.*  
*stet-īt,* *stet-ērunt.*  
*stet-ērit,* *stet-ērint.*  
*reg-īt,* *reg-unt.*

## Lesson 19.

81. Plural terminations of substantives and adjectives:

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
<i>Nom.</i>	æ,	i,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.
<i>Gen.</i>	ārum,	ōrum,	um,	uum,	ērum. or ium*, }

## 82. VOCABULARY 16.

To fall down, de-cid-ēre	(the <i>deciduous</i> cypress).
Autumn, auctum-nus, G. l.	
The country, rus <sup>w</sup> , G. rūris	( <i>rural</i> pleasures).
To fly (out), e-völ-āre	( <i>volatile</i> : <i>e out</i> , volāre <i>fly</i> ).
From; out of, ex, governing the <i>ablative</i> .	
In, in, governing the <i>abl.</i>	
City, urbs, G. urb-is	( <i>urbanity</i> <sup>x</sup> ).

Determine by the Table, given at page 16, the *genders* of *dolor*, *auctum-nus*, *rus*, *urbs*.  
<sup>w</sup> ‘In,’ when it means ‘*into*,’ governs the *accusative*.

## Exercise 19.

83. The husbandmen are building a wall. The boys will show the road. Christians will not fear death. The citizens will pull down Sulla's house. Wise (men) value true greatness of mind *very highly*<sup>z</sup>. The unlearned value wisdom at-a-low-price. My friends will not disregard my sorrow. The leaves fall down *in autumn*<sup>y</sup>. The slaves will avenge the death of their master. The boys will hear a voice. The slaves will show the gardens. They will appease the anger of the husbandmen with a gift.

*Impii mortem timēbunt. Christiāni est' pecuniam parvi aestimāre<sup>z</sup>. Fidem suam invīti serv-av-ērunt. Rūs<sup>y</sup> ex urbe evolābunt. Invītus<sup>x</sup> domi (168) manē-*

\* *Um* is to be used when you are not told to put *iam*.

w *Patria* is the *country* of which we are citizens; *rus* is ‘*the country*,’ as opposed to ‘*the town*’.

x Meaning ‘*city politeness*,’ as opposed to ‘*rustic coarseness*’.

y *Into the country*, by a rule to be given presently.

bat. Puērum in urbe sepel-iv-ērunt. Patres filios suos docuērant. Puellæ clamavērunt. Puēri vulpem non timēbunt.

---

### *Lesson 20.*

*On finding the nominative of the third declension from any other case.*

84. The most common way of all is given in the following Rule :

- (1) Find the *root*<sup>a</sup>, and add *s* to it.
    - a) For *es*, *gs*, you must write *s*; and if a *t* sound<sup>b</sup> or *r* stand before *s*, throw it away.
    - b) If the letters before *s* are *nt*, sometimes *t* only is thrown away: sometimes both consonants,
    - c) Besides this a short *i* in the last syllable should be changed into *e*.
  - (2) Another way is to throw away the *last letter* of the root.
    - a) This applies principally to *n* (sometimes to *r*, *l*).
    - b) An *i* before *n* should be changed into *o*, as *consuetudin-em* (*consuetudi*) *consuetudo*.
  - (3) A third way is to add *is*, *es*, or (for neutrals) *s* to the root.
  - (4) Sometimes 'īr,' 'ōr,' as the last letters of a root, should be changed into 'īs'; and 'ū' into 'ūt'<sup>b</sup>.
- 

<sup>a</sup> Sometimes the root is itself the nominative.

<sup>b</sup> That is, *t* or *d*.

b) EXAMPLES.—From *ped-es* we get *ped-s* = *pes* [by (1) a]; from *frūtīc-is*, *frutic* = *frutes*: *civilit̄-em*, *civilit̄-s*, *civiliās*: *animant̄-em*, *animant̄-s*, *animans*: *elephant̄-is*, *elephant̄-s*, *elēphas* [(1) b]. By (2) *longitudin-em*, *longitūdi*, *longitūdo*: *farris*, *farr*, *far*: *felle*, *fell*, *fel*. By (3) *nub-em*, *nub-es*; *ret-i*, *ret-e*. By (4) *latīr-is*, *latīs*; *corpōr-is*, *corps*; *capit̄-is*, *capit̄*.

## 85. VOCABULARY 17.

	Root.	Nom.	
A flock,	grēg,	grex, m.	(gregarious).
A shrub,	frutīc,	frutex, f.	
A state,	civītāt	civitās, f.	
An elephant,	elephant	éléphas, m.	
Custom,	consuetudin	consuetudo, f.	
Honey,	mell	mel, n.	(melli-fluous).
Side, ead,	lātēr ead	latus, n.	(lateral).
Body,	corpōr	corpus, n.	(capital).
Cloud,	nūb	nubea, f.	(corporal).

## Exercise 20.

86. The boys will not fear the elephant. The slave will show the shrub. Balbus had praised my custom. He feels a pain in his side (*say*, of his side). The boy will feel a pain in his head (*say*, of his head). The lion will not fear the elephant. The slave had shown the shrub in his master's garden. He will retain his father's custom. The state will observe its laws. The husbandman had shown his flocks. He will laugh-at the flock of unlearned men. My father feared the cloud.

Caius leges civitatis violavērit. Christiani est' nem̄ nem violare. Servus mortui elephantis corpus puero monstrābat. Puella epistōlam suā manu scripsit. Facile est lanam carpēre. Biennium Carthagīne manēbunt. Domīni servos fidēles vindicavērant. Domīnōrum est' fidēles servos laudāre. Patris est filium suum docēre. Figūræ nihil ' habent stabilitatis. Hieme ursi in antro dormiunt. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Christianus nem̄ nem violabit. Fidēles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

## Lesson 21.

87. The *Imperative* may be got from the *infinitive* by throwing away *re* (*amā*, *monē*, *regē*, *audiē*).

88. ‘*Not*’ with *imperatives* is *nē*,  
A ‘*non*’ is hateful then to see.

*Crabrones nē irrīta.*

*Hornets do-not irritate* (Do not irritate hornets).

### ‘89. VOCABULARY 18.

It is,	est.
Wasp,	vespa.
To irritate,	irritāre.
Hornet,	crab-r-o, ēnia.
Never,	nunquam.
Useful, profitable,	ūtil-is

(*utility*).

### *Exercise 21.*

[The ‘*do*’ before ‘*not*’ is only the *auxiliary verb* belonging to the following verb.]

90. Do not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time*<sup>4</sup>. The figure will have *no stability*<sup>4</sup>. Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

[Obs. The ‘*do*’ of the *imperative* must be put before ‘*not*;’ just as if ‘*nē*’ were to be translated ‘*do not*.’]

Patriæ tuæ leges nē viöla. Veram an̄imi\* magnitudinem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*<sup>7</sup> fidem suam servare. Turpe est, patriæ suæ leges violare. Poëtas nē irrīta. *Christiani est*<sup>7</sup> neminem irritare. Invitus saltav̄rat. Portas urbis *invitus* claudēbat. *Invitus* peccavit. Humanum est peccare. Ne pecca. Nunquam est utile peccare.

\* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adjective and substantive.

## Lesson 22.

On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound (in *c*, *g*, or *qu*).

91. The common way is, to add *s* to the root of the present; remembering that,

Any *k* sound with *s* = <sup>c</sup>*x*. [that is, for *cs*, *gs*, or *qus*, write *x*.]

Thus from *cing-ēre*, *tēg-ēre*, *dīc-ēre*, *cōqu-ēre*<sup>d</sup>, we get for the roots of the perfect,

( <i>cing-s</i> )	( <i>teg-s</i> )	( <i>dīc-s</i> )	( <i>coqu-s</i> )
<i>cinx.</i>	<i>tex.</i>	<i>dix.</i>	<i>cox.</i>

## 92. VOCABULARY 19.

Attack,	oppugnare.	
Greatest,	{ summus ; properly <i>highest</i> , but the general word for <i>greatest</i> , when <i>qualities</i> are spoken of.	
To surround,	<i>cing-ēre</i>	( <i>circumference</i> ).
To cover,	<i>tēg-ēre</i>	( <i>protect</i> ).
To say,	<i>dīc-ēre</i>	( <i>dictation</i> ).
To cook ; bake ; ripen,	{ <i>cōqu-ēre</i>	( <i>de-coction</i> ).
Fault,	<i>culpa</i>	( <i>culpable</i> ).
Lie,	<i>mendācium</i>	( <i>mendacious</i> ).
Cloak,	<i>pallium</i>	{ to <i>palliate</i> an offence ; i.e. to <i>cloak</i> it).
Food,	<i>cibus</i> .	
The sun,	<i>sol, sōl-is, m.</i>	(the <i>solar rays</i> ).
To fill,	<i>complēre</i>	( <i>complement</i> of men).
All,	{ <i>omnis</i> ; <i>cunctus</i> (the latter word means 'all taken together').	
To illuminate,	<i>illustrāre</i>	( <i>illustrate</i> ).
Light,	<i>lux, lūc-is</i>	( <i>lucid</i> ).
River,	{ <i>fūmen, flumīn-ia</i> . What gender? [See page 16, g].	
Assumed-appearance ; pretence,	{ <i>simulatio</i> , G. <i>simulati-</i> <i>ōnis</i>	{ ( <i>dis</i> -simulation).
Whole,	{ <i>totus, a, um</i> : but G. <i>to-</i> <i>tius</i> , D. <i>toti</i> . In other cases, regular. [See page 111, 10.]	

<sup>c</sup> This mark means 'equals.'      <sup>d</sup> Qu = *kw*; pronounce *cōkwēre*.

93. Sol cuncta suā luce illustrat.  
*The sun all (things) with his light illuminates.*

94. ~~cas~~ ‘Thing,’ ‘things,’ are often untranslated: the adjective must be put in the neuter.

### *Exercise 22.*

95. He surrounds his head with a garland. He had surrounded the city with a wall. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. The boy had said nothing. The girl had cooked the food. Do not cover (your) fault with a lie. The slave has said many (things). The sun fills all (things) with its light. The assumed-appearance of folly covered great wisdom. It is the business' of the slave to cook the food for his master. It is never useful to lose time. How much' pleasure has he had ?

Sol *cuncta suā luce illustravērat*. Christiāni' non est, mendacio culpam tegēre. Puēri dixērunt. Flumen urbem cingit. *Totam hičmem<sup>12)</sup> ursus in antro dormiēbat*. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio tegēbat. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texērat. Hannibal Saguntum oppugnabat. Turpe est peccare. Biennium Romæ manebunt. Carthagine *inviti* manēbant.

---

### *Lesson 23.*

*On finding the root of the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a t sound (d or t).*

96. Here too the root of the perfect is generally got from the root of the present by adding *s*.

The *t* sound must be thrown away before this *s*, and the preceding vowel, if short, made long.

Claud-o,	claud-s,	<i>claus.</i>
Divid-o,	divid-s,	<i>divis.</i>

## 97. The remaining cases of the plural.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

Dat. } is, ībūs, ēbūs. (In the *fourth* it is some-  
Abl. } times ūbus.)

## 98. VOCABULARY 20.

To divide, divid-ěre.

Part, pars, partis. Gender ? (p. 16, g.)

Three, { tres, neut. tria (declined regularly :  
gen. iun.).

A man, { vir\*, G. viri (declined like a noun  
of second).

To accuse, accūsare.

Theft, furtum (furtive).

Bribery, ambītus, G. ūs.

To acquit, absolvēre (absolve; *absolution*).

Treachery, proditio, G. ūnis.

To death, may be translated by *capitūs* ('of the head').

Into, in, with the accusative.

Because, quia.

Always, semper.

## 99.

Puer eximiā pulchritudīne.

A boy of singular beauty.

Caium proditionis\* accūsant.

Caius of treachery they accuse.

\* *Homo*, G. homīnis, and *vir* are both 'man:' but *homo* is 'man' as opposed to other animals; that is, 'a human being:' whereas '*vir*' is 'man' as opposed to 'woman.'

When 'men' means 'human beings,' 'men' generally (including both sexes), it should be translated by *homines*.

When 'man' is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by '*homo*', because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.

When 'man' is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c. it should be translated by '*vir*', because *man* is *superior* to *woman*.

\* ~~as~~ Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, and *condemning*, take a genitive of the *charge*.

As transitive verbs they, of course, take an accusative of the person accused.

100. Obs. Where we describe a person or thing by a substantive and adjective governed by 'of,' the Romans used either the genitive or the ablative.

101. (Eng.) To condemn a person to death.  
To condemn a person of the head<sup>f</sup> (*capitis*).

### *Exercise 23.*

102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (the things) into three parts. He will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do not divide the food. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating (all) things with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. Virtue is the highest wisdom. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ<sup>11)</sup> vivit. Balbum ambitūs accusavérant. *Quantum cibi*<sup>4</sup> amittunt! Balbum proditionis absolvent. Balbum *capitis* damnabunt. Hiēme<sup>a, b)</sup> ursi in antris dormiunt. Trienium<sup>a, c)</sup> Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus Caium accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavérat. Portas urbis clausérat. Balbi est, omnia in tres partes divídere. Facile est saltare Nunquam utile est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

### *Lesson 24.*

*Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.*

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by lengthening the vowel of the present: as *ēd-ere*, *ēd*.

<sup>f</sup> We may suppose that it was originally 'to condemn a person to the loss of the head,' or rather 'to a punishment of the head.'

104. If the vowel of the present is ā, the root of the perf. will have ē. Thus cāp-ere, cēp.

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute.

Thus frang-ēre, frāg, frēg. (break)  
 rump-ēre, rup, rūp. (burst; break through.)  
 vinc-ēre, vic, vīc. (conquer.)

### 106. VOCABULARY 21.

Buy,	ēm-ēre, r. ēm	(pre-emption).
Take,		
Receive,	} cāp-ere, r. cēp.	
Arm,	brāchium.	
Treaty,	fōdēr-, nom. fōd-ūs (neut.), by 84, 4.	(con-feder-ate).
Chain,	vīcūlum.	
Prison,	cācer- (nom. cācer, 84.)	(in-cācer-ate).
Gaul,	Gallus.	
Enēmy,	hostis, G. hostis	(hostile).
From,	(after receive, capere), ex with abl.	

### Exercise 24.

107. Caius had broken his arm. The Gauls had broken the treaty. They had broken-through the treaty. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. Cæsar conquered the Gauls. It is not easy to conquer the Gauls. He had appeased Balbus with the greatest prudence. They will break-through their chains. They had broken-through the chains of their prison. It is easy to break (one's) arm. They are losing much money. He was losing much pleasure. They will condemn Balbus to death. He had conquered his enemies. Balbus has broken his arm at Rome.

Nunquam utile est foedus rumpēre. Nunquam utile est fidem fallēre, quia semper est turpe. Facile est puerorum anīmos donis placare. Turpe est fōdēra negligēre. Galli negligēbant fōdēra. Utile est omnībus laborare. Nemo semper labōrat. Caius brāchium suum Carthagīne frēgērat. Culpas suas simūlatiōne virtūtis texit. Quantum mellis ēmērunt ! Quantum voluptatis ceperunt ! Multum voluptatis ex meo dolōre cēpērant.

## Lesson 25.

## 108. VOCABULARY 22..

Colour,	color, G. colōr-is.	Gender !
An estate,	fundus.	
Large,	grandis.	
Immense ; huge,	ingens, G. ingent-is.	
Conquered,	victus, a, um	(victory, &c.).
To dwell,	habitat̄e	(habitation).
To reign,	regnāre.	
Sardis, or Sardes,	{ Sardes (a plural noun), G. Sardium, &c.	
Thebes,	Thēbæ, G. Thebārum : plur. noun.	
Victory,	victōria,	
Nightingale,	luscinia,	
Much,	multus.	
To flourish,	florēre, r.s florū.	
Often,	sepe.	
Peace,	pax, pācis	(pacific).

109. Spem pretio non emo.  
*Hope for a price not do I buy.*

110. After a verb of *buying*, 'for' may be considered a sign of the ablative.

That is to say, 'for' is to be untranslated ; and the noun that expresses *the price*, put in the ablative.

## Exercise 25.

[In what case is the price for which put ?]

111. He has bought the estate *for* a large sum-of-money. *The conqueror* often buy peace for an immense sum of money. He had dwelt *many years at Athens*<sup>11)</sup>. Croesus reigned *at Sardis*. He has bought a victory *with*<sup>h</sup> much blood. He will have dwelt *many years*<sup>12)</sup> *at Rome*. The nightingale changes (her) colour *in the autumn*<sup>12)</sup>. It is impious, not to love (one's) parents. Caius had broken his arm. Caesar has conquered the Gauls.

[When is the place where put in the gen. ? when in the abl. ?]

*Thebis* Pindārus floruit. *Multos annos* Romæ habitavérant. Impium est, leges patriæ violare. *Invitus*

<sup>g</sup> Obs. R. means 'root of present,' and r. 'root of perfect.'

<sup>h</sup> That is, 'for' much blood.

legem violāvit. Invīti leges violavissent. Balbum capitis damnavērunt. Biennium Romæ habitabunt. Patriæ tuæ leges ne viõla. Caium proditionis accusabunt.

---

### Lesson 26.

112. Since, in the *third* conjugation, both the *present* and the *perfect* have their third person in '*it*', it is well to learn how to distinguish a third person of the *perfect* from a third person of the *present*.
113. a) If '*it*' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the *perfect*.  
 b) If '*it*' has *u* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the *perfect*<sup>k</sup>.  
 c) If the two first consonants of the root are *the same*, the tense is the *perfect*.  
 (Thus '*tetendit*' is the *perfect*.)  
 d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is *very often* the *perfect*.

### 114. VOCABULARY 23.

Some verbs that form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is *redoubling*.

Bite,	mord-ēre, r. mōmord	(re-morse).
Hang (neut.),	pend-ēre, r. pēpend	(sus-pense).
Shear, shave,	tond-ēre, r. tōtōnd	(tonsure).

---

Shoulder,	humērus, G. i.	
Beard,	barba	(barber).
Sheep,	ovis, G. ovis.	
Flay,	de-glüb-ēre (see 75).	
Shepherd,	past-or, G. óris	(pastor).
Wolf,	lūpus, G. i.	
From,	ab, governing the ablative.	

### Exercise 26.

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved

<sup>k</sup> This is certain, in the case of *āv-it*, *īv-it*. But *arguit*, *congruit*, *im̄tuit*, *statuit*, &c., are of the *present*.

(his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have surrounded the city with walls. They have *unwillingly offended-against* the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris' est tondēre oves, non deglubēre. Sagittæ ab humero pependērunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totōndit: Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. Boni canis non est<sup>1</sup>, oves mordēre. Tonde oves; ne deglūbe. Servus portas urbis clausērit. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. Lusciniæ colōrem mutabunt. Auctumno lusciniæ colorem suum mutavērint.

### Lesson 27.

#### 116. Personal Pronouns.

	N.	G.	D.	Ac.	Ab.	N.A.	G.	D.Abl.
I,	ēgo,	meī, mīhi, mē,				nōs, nostrum or nostri,	nōbīs,	
Thou,	tū,	tui, tībi, tē,				vōs, vestrum or vestri,	vōbīs,	
Him, her, it, Them <sup>1</sup> ,	{(none)}	sūi, sībi, sē,				(Plural the same as the singular.)		
	Myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; themselves, are also expressed (respectively) by these pronouns.							

117. 'He gave him a book,' means 'he gave a book to him.'

'He is like him,' —— 'he is like to him.'

118. (☞) After verbs of *giving, paying, costing, &c.* put in 'to' before one of the *accusatives*, and translate it by the *dative*.

119. (☞) Adjectives of *likeness* take the dative<sup>m</sup> after them.

This means, that what seems the *accusative* after 'like' must be translated into Latin by the *dative*.

<sup>1</sup> *Him, her, it, them*, are not translated by *sui*, &c., unless they stand for the *same person or thing* that the *nominative* (or other *principal noun*) of the sentence stands for.

<sup>m</sup> But often the *genitive*. 'Similis mei,' means, he is like me in *character*; 'similis mihi,' that he is like me in *face*.

## 120. VOCABULARY 24.

	R. r. (r means root of perfect.)
To give,	{ d-are, dēd. (This verb has d in the last syll. but one.)
To sell,	vend-ere, vendid.
To stand ; cost,	st-are, stet
Prison,	carc-er, G. ēria
Gold,	aурum.
Silver,	argentum.
Blood,	sanguis, sanguin-is, mas.
Roman,	Romānus.
Beast,	{ bellua (of large beasts; elephants, whales, &c.).
Chain,	vinculum.

121. Isocr̄ates orātor<sup>n</sup> unam oratiōnem  
 Isocrates the orator one oration  
 viginti talentis vendidit.  
 for twenty talents sold.

(The orator Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.)

## Exercise 27.

122. The Hippopotamus<sup>o</sup>, a great beast, dwells in the Nile<sup>p</sup>. Caius, a wicked man (98, note), will sell his country for gold. He has sold his country for gold. How much<sup>q</sup> silver had he given his slave? Victory cost the Romans (117) much blood<sup>r</sup>. Do not sell your honour for gold. It is the part<sup>s</sup> of a Christian to think little of<sup>t</sup> gold and silver. Balbus had burst the chains of his prison. It is the part of a Christian to praise the good.

Improbōrum est<sup>u</sup>, patriam auro vendēre. Anīmus carcēris sui vincūla rumpēbat. Fidem suam auro ven-

<sup>n</sup> When two nouns are spoken of the same thing, the second is put in the same case as the first.

The second is then said to be 'in apposition' to the first.—Hence 'apposition' is when the second noun is a name, or title, or description of the preceding ones.

<sup>o</sup> Hippopotamus.

<sup>p</sup> Nilus.

<sup>q</sup> Remember that the blood was the price paid.

didērunt. Turpe est, fidem suam auro vendēre. *Quantum* tibi *argenti*<sup>4</sup> dedērat \*? Pastor ovem tondēbat. Agricōla labōrem finivērat.

---

### Lesson 28.

*Tenses of the verb 'esse,' to be.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
123. Present,	est,	sunt.
Imperfect,	ērāt.	
Future,	ērīt,	ērunt.

Root of perfect *fu*; and therefore the tenses with root of perfect formed regularly, *fuit*, *fuerat*, *fuōrit*, *fuisset*.

124. The verb 'to be' takes a nominative (of either a *substantive* or an *adjective*) after it.

☞ An adjective *after* the verb agrees with the nominative *before* the verb.

### 125. VOCABULARY 25.

Happy,	{ <i>felix</i> <sup>r</sup> , G. <i>felic-is</i> <i>beatus</i>	( <i>felicity</i> ). ( <i>the beatitudes</i> ).
Contented,	<i>contentus</i> <sup>s</sup> , governs the <i>abl.</i>	
Worthy,	<i>dignus</i> <sup>s</sup> , governs <i>abl.</i>	( <i>dignity</i> ).
Unworthy,	<i>indignus</i> <sup>s</sup> , governs <i>abl.</i>	( <i>indignity</i> ).
Endued,	<i>præditus</i> <sup>s</sup> .	
Relying on,	<i>frētus</i> <sup>s</sup> .	
Strength,	<i>vires</i> , G. <i>virium</i> , &c. Plural of <i>vis</i> .	
A little,	<i>parvum</i> , <i>neut.</i> <i>adj.</i> used as a substantive.	
Free,	<i>liber</i> <sup>s</sup> , <i>libera</i> , <i>liberum</i>	( <i>liberty</i> ).
Never,	<i>nunquam</i> .	

---

\* Remember that in a *question*, the auxiliary verb stands before the nominative case.

<sup>r</sup> *Beatus* relates more to *true, inward* happiness than *felix*, which means *successful in one's undertakings*, &c.

• ☞ *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *contentus*, *fretus*, *liber*, &c. govern the *ablative*.

That is, the *abl.* follows them without a preposition: so that the English 'with,' 'from,' &c., must not be translated after them.

126. Terra est rotunda.

*The earth is round.*

(*Rotunda* nom. fem. to agree with *terra*.)

Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.

*Very many stars suns are (are suns).*

### *Exercise 28.*

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*<sup>4</sup> (thing). Balbus, relying on his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127\*. (What does *luce* come from!—See 84, (1) a).

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendidit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est. Improborum est<sup>5</sup> malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

### *Lesson 29.*

128. (☞ The compounds of *esse* (except *posse*) govern the dative.

### 129. VOCABULARY 26.

(Compounds of *esse*; governing the *dative*.)

To do good; to be  
serviceable,      } prod-esse t, profu.  
                        r.

<sup>t</sup> These forms follow the conjugation of *esse* exactly: but *prodessu* drops its *d* before these tenses of *esse* that begin with a consonant. Thus *pro-sunt*: not *prod-sunt*.

To be prejudicial,	ob-esse <sup>t</sup> , obfu.
To be engaged in,	inter-esse <sup>t</sup> , interfu.
Very many,	plurimi, æ, a (plural).
As many as possible,	quam <sup>u</sup> plurimi, æ, a.
The greatest possible, — <i>he can, or could,</i>	quam <sup>u</sup> maximus, a, um. }
To raise (forces),	compārare.
Forces,	copiæ, ārum, plur.
State,	civitas, G. tātis.
Battle,	praelium.
Anger,	ira.
Human,	humānus.
Race,	genūs, G. genēr-is. <i>What gender? (generic.)</i>
Becomes,	fit, followed by the nominative.

### Exercise 29.

130. Balbus was engaged in the battle. *It is the part of a Christian*<sup>t</sup> to do-good to *as many as possible*. Cæsar raises the *greatest forces he can*. Anger has cost the human race much blood. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. Very-many men are unworthy of life. The Christian will do-good to *as many as possible*. Very-many cities were raising forces. Many states, relying on their strength, are raising forces. They condemned Caius, a man unworthy of life. The conquered will dwell at Sardes. Peace cost me a great sum-of-money. The son will avenge his father's blood.

Cæsar *quam maximas copias comparavērat*. Caius, *vir summo ingenio præditus, Romæ habitat*. Servus meus prælio interfuit. Fides plurimis profuit. Nemo fit casu bonus. Christianorum est<sup>u</sup> avaritiam damnare. Caius multis præliis interfuerat.

<sup>t</sup> See note in preceding page.

<sup>u</sup> How *quam* gives the meaning of '*as possible*' to a superlative, is explained in the '*Differences of idiom*,' number 9.

## Lesson 30.

## Subjunctive Verb.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	
PRESENT (R. <sup>v</sup> )	ět,	ěät,	ăt,	yăt.	
IMPERFECT (R.)	ärët,	érët,	ĕrët,	irët *	
Perfect (r. <sup>v</sup> )	ěrët.				
Pluperfect (r.)	issët.				

The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an *n* before the *t*.

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence, is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the subjunctive present is to be construed, '*he, &c. may —*.' without *ut*, it must be '*let him —, &c.*' or '*may he —, &c.*'

133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative*, takes *nō* for '*not*' (*ne putet, do not let him think*).

## Exercises 30.

134. *Write down*: That <sup>w</sup> he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

*Construe*: Floreat. Ut florëret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irritet. Ut irritet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingëret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scriptisset. Ut scribëret. Pläcket pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepeliret. Sepeliat filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapëre discant.

\* R. means *with root of present*.

R. ————— *root of perfect*.

\* Obs. The 3rd sing. of the *imperfect subjunctive* may be formed from the *infinitive* by adding *t*.

w 'Ut' is 'that.'

## Lesson 31.

135. (☞) The infinitive in English often expresses a *purpose*: but the infinitive in Latin *never* does.

- (Eng.) I am come to see you.  
 (Lat.) I am come that I may see you.  
 (Eng.) I came to see you.  
 (Lat.) I came that I might see you.

136. (☞) The English infin. expressing a *purpose* may be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive.

137. The *imperfect* subjunctive must be used, when the verb is of a *past tense*<sup>x</sup>; the *present* follows the other tenses.

138. (☞) The 'perfect with *have*' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something *has been done* in a *still present* period of time) is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*<sup>y</sup>.

Obs. Neuter verbs of motion form their perfect definite *act.* with 'am.' so that 'He is come' = 'He has come,' and is followed by *pres. subjunctive*<sup>z</sup>.

## 139. VOCABULARY 27.

R.				
To eat,	ēd-ēre,		ēd (103)	{edible).
To come,	vēn-īre,		vēn (103)	{ad-vent).
To learn,	disc-ēre,		discē * (113, e).	
To read,	lēg-ēre, lēg (103).			

140. (1) Vēnit      *ut*      portas      claudat.  
*He is coming*    *that*    *the gates*    *he may shut.*  
*(He is coming*    *to shut*    *the gates.*)
- (2) Vēnit      *ut*      portas      claudēret.  
*He came*    *that*    *the gates*    *he might shut.*  
*(He came*    *to shut*    *the gates.)*
- (3) Vēnit      *et*      portas      claudat.  
*He is come*    *that*    *the gates*    *he may shut.*  
*(He is come*    *to shut*    *the gates.*)

<sup>x</sup> That is of the *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect*.

<sup>y</sup> It is just so in English:

I write, or am writing, I shall write, I have written, I was writing, I wrote, I had written,	}	that I may, &c.

<sup>z</sup> So too 'was come' in the pluperf.

\* The syllable prefixed is called a *reduplicative*.

*Exercise 31.*

[What tense is ‘he was come?’ 138, 2.]

141. He will come *to surround* the boy’s head with a garland. He was come *to surround* the girl’s head with a garland. He came *to irritate* the wasps. They were come *to pull-down* Sulla’s house. He was come to give *me* an estate. They had come *to condemn* me to death<sup>a</sup>. Do not shut the gate. He was come *to raise the greatest forces he could*<sup>b</sup>. Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn<sup>a</sup> to read. The boy has learnt to play.

[Construe *ut* and the *subjunctive* by the *infinitive*.]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis claudat. Vēnit<sup>b</sup>, *ut* quam maximas<sup>b</sup> copias compāret. Lēgit, *ut* discat. Edit, *ut* vivat. Edit, *ut* vivēret. Non edunt, *ut* vivant; sed vivunt, *ut* edant. Romæ plurimi vivunt, *ut* edant. Veniat Caius, *ut* epistōlam suâ manu scribat. Cantet puella. Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, *ut* Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, *ut* me audiat. Venerunt, *ut* me audiant. Venerunt, *ut* te audirent. Edunt, *ut* vitam conservent.

*Lesson 32.*

142. After ‘such,’ ‘so,’ ‘of such a kind,’ &c. ‘that’ must be translated by ‘*ut*,’ and the verb after ‘*that*’ must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin, though in English it is in the *indicative*.

**143. VOCABULARY 28.**

So great,	tantus.
Mountain,	mons, mont-is, mas.
Highest,	summus

(summit).

<sup>a</sup> *Disco* is followed by the *infinitive* (not by *ut* with the *subjunctive*).

<sup>b</sup> Obs. When the *present* *subjunctive* follows a *perfect*, the *perfect* must be translated by ‘has’ or, if it is a verb of motion, by ‘is.’ because the use of a *present* proves it to be the *perfect definite*. See 137.

Top of, Middle, or midst of,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{summus,} \\ \text{medius,} \end{array} \right\}$	in agreement with their subst.
Snow,	nix, nīv-is.	Gender?
Alps,	Alpes, Alpium, &c.	
Cold,	frīg-ūs, ūris.	Gender? (frigid).
Not-yet,	nōdūm.	
Fish,	piscis, G. pisc-is, mas.	(piscatory).
Pavement,	pavimentum.	
Wine,	vinum	(rinous fermentation).
Preserve,	conservare	(conservative).
To swim,	nātāre.	
To melt,	liqueſc-ēre, licu-	(liquid).

144. In summis Alpibus tantum est frīgus,  
On the top of the Alps so great is the cold,  
*ut* nix ibi nunquam liqueſcat.  
that the snow there never melts.

145. (*Eng.*) On the top of the mountain.  
(*Lat.*) On the mountain highest. (In *summo monte.*)  
(*Eng.*) In the middle (or midst) of the waters.  
(*Lat.*) In the middle waters. (In *mediis aquis.*)

### Excercise 32.

146. *On the top of the mountain*<sup>11</sup> the snow never melts. *On the top of the Alps* the snows never melt. The cold is so-great, that the snow is not-yet melted <sup>c</sup>. The fish is swimming in *the middle of the water*. Boys swim *on the top of the waters*. The pavement is swimming with wine. Let the slave come <sup>d</sup>. He was eating, to preserve his life. He will swim, to preserve his life. May the snows melt! The boy is singing on the top of the oak. The boys will dance on the top of the mountain.

Obs. The *subjunctive* after *ut* must be construed by the indicative, when a *tantus* stands in the former clause.

In *summis montibus* tantum erat frīgus, *ut* nix ibi nunquam liqueſcēret. Vēnit, *ut* patriam auro vendat.

<sup>c</sup> 'Is melted,' like 'is come,' is the *perf. active*.

<sup>d</sup> The third person of the present subjunctive is used as an *imperative*.

Imprōbi homīnes patriam auro vendidērunt. In summo monte tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nondum licuērit\*. Tanta est pueri industria, ut multa discat. Nix est candida. Venit, ut patriæ suæ leges violaret. Avis in summâ arbore cantabat.

### Lesson 33.

#### 147. Subjunctive of *esse*.

Present, sit.—Imperfect, esset. (Fuērit, fuis-  
set, regular from *fu*.)

148. The verb ‘can,’ ‘am able,’ is made up of an old adjective ‘potis’ meaning ‘able’ and the verb ‘to be.’ but the two words were run together into one with some change.

149. To get the third persons of ‘to be able’ from ‘to be.’

~~☞~~ Place *pot* before the third persons of *to be*; throwing away the *f* from those that begin with that letter; and change *t* into *s* before another *s*, shortening *potess* into *poss*. We thus get (from the forms in 123), *potest*, *possunt*: *potērat*: *potētit*, *potērunt*: and *potu* (for *potfu*) for the root of the perfect.

The subjunctive will be *possit*, *posset*, &c. Infin. *posse*.

150. Some verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, throw away the *k* sound before *s*:

sparg-ēre, spars.

merg-ēre, mers.

#### 151. VOCABULARY 29.

Nest,	nīdus.	
Bird,	avis, <i>G. avis</i>	
Seed,	sēmen, semīnis,	<i>Gender?</i> (disseminate).
Dangerous,	pericul-ōsus *.	
Danger,	pericūlum	(peril).
Victim,	victīma.	
Altar,	āra.	

\* What was said of the present and imperfect subjunctive, may be extended to the perfect and pluperfect.

~~☞~~ The imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the past tenses.

\* Adjectives in *ōsus* mean full of what the substantive they are derived from denotes.

Sprinkle,	adspingo, r. adspers.	
Priest,	sacerdo-s, ôtis	(sacerdotal).
	R. r.	
To plunge into ( <i>trans.</i> ),	immerge, immers	(immerse).
Scatter,	sparg-ere, spars.	
To build (of a <i>nest</i> ),	con-stru-ere, con-strux <sup>f</sup>	(construct).

152. The particles *nō* and *num* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun, or adverb of *place*, *time*, or *manner*, one of these particles should be put in.

*Nō* should always *follow* and be *joined* to a word. If there is a ‘not’ in the sentence, it should be joined to the ‘non’ (nonnō).

- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 153. Nonnō scribit ? | <i>Is not he writing ?</i>      |
| Scribitnō Caius ?    | <i>Is Caius writing ?</i>       |
| Num scribit Caius ?  | <i>Is Caius writing ? (No.)</i> |
| Arare potest.        | <i>He can plough.</i>           |
| Potestnō arare ?     | <i>Can he plough ?</i>          |

OBS. ‘*Num*’ is used when the answer ‘*no*’ is expected; so that ‘*num scribit Caius ?*’ means, ‘Caius is not writing, is he ?’

### Exercise 33.

When the answer ‘*no*’ is expected, it will be added thus :  
[No.]

☞ The ‘to’ of the infin. is omitted after *can*, *may*, *might*, &c., and *see*, *hear*, *feel*, *bid*, *dare*, *make* &c.

154. Does he live to eat ? [No.] Does not he eat to live ? The husbandman has scattered seeds. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds ? He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. They *are come*<sup>29)</sup> to condemn<sup>28)</sup> you to death<sup>9</sup>. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*<sup>10</sup> ? [No.] The boy’s industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep ? Are you shearing the sheep ?

[In construing, omit the *nō* or *num*, but make the sentence a question.]

<sup>f</sup> This seems a very irregular perfect; probably the verb was *struv̄ere* originally.

g Hence the verb that follows *can*, *could*, &c. is in the *infinitive* mood.

[In a question, the auxiliary verb must stand before the nominative case : and the form 'do—does,' 'did,' must be used for the present and perfect respectively. (The perfect *definitus* must still be translated by *have, has.*)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immerserant. Periculōsum est, *hieme*<sup>12)</sup> se in flumen immergere. Puer se in flumen immergat<sup>30)</sup>. *Agricolārum est*<sup>1</sup> semīna auctumno<sup>a, b)</sup> spargere. Nonnē in *summī Alpībus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquecat? Avis in *summā quercu* nidum construxerat. Scripsitnē Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguīne aram adspersit. Num rex portas urbis suā manu claudet? Nonnē boni est pastōris<sup>1</sup> tondēre oves, non deglubere?

### Lesson 34.

#### Root of supine.

155. There are two *supines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. (☞) The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose*: it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active* (*amātum, to love*).

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive*.

But it may be Englished by the *infin. act.* when that gives better English<sup>h</sup>. Both supines are *really active*: *factum* is '(for) doing:' *factu*, 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the root of the supine<sup>i</sup>.

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked by *p.*) ends in *t*; sometimes in *s*.

159. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the *root of supine* is regularly obtained by adding

<sup>h</sup> See 163.

<sup>i</sup> It would be far better to give the *root of the supine*, than a fictitious form.

1.      2.      4.  
 $\bar{a}t$ ,       $\ddot{a}t$ ,       $\bar{u}t$ ,      to the roots of the present.  
 (amāt) (monit) (audīt).

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s* (especially to the *t* sounds).

160. Obs. Any *p* sound before *t* is *pt* (or *pt* = *pt* or *bt*).

Any *k* sound ————— *ct* (or *ct* = *ct*, *gt*, or *qut*).

Hence *scrib-tum*, *reg-tum*, must be written *scriptum*, *re-tum*. Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s*. (See 96, 150.)

### 161. VOCABULARY 30.

To forage (supine),	pabulātum.
To fetch water (supine)	aquātum.
To lie down,	cubītum (sup. from <i>cubāre</i> ).
To go to bed; to go to roost,	{ cubītum ire.
To send,	mitt-ēre, r. mīs ( <i>for mit-s</i> ; p. miss (re-mit)).
To go,	ire k.
To go a hunting,	venātum ire (venātum, sup. to hunt).
To go away,	ab-ire k, r. abi.
To return,	red-ire k, r. redi.
Hen,	gallina.
Evening,	vesp-er, G. ēris
Legion,	legi-o, G. önis. Gender?
Fourth,	quartus.
Pleasant,	jūcundus.

162. Mittit legātos pacem petītum.

*He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for.*

163. (Eng.) It is hard to say<sup>1</sup>.

(Lat.) It is hard (in) saying (difficile est dictu).

<sup>k</sup> *Ire* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. iv : p. it.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Pres. it, eunt.	eat.	The participle, which will be
Imperf. ibat.	īret.	wanted presently, is <i>iens</i> , G. <i>euntis</i> , &c.
Fut. ibit.		Gerunds, <i>cundi</i> , &c.

The compounds *ab-ire*, *red-ire*, are conjugated exactly in the same way (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms), but they generally drop *v* from the root of the perf. (*redi-erit*, *redi-isset*, &c.; not *redivisit*, *redivisset*).

<sup>1</sup> Hence after *hard*, *pleasant*, &c., the active infinitive is to be translated by the *supine* in *u*.

*Exercise 34.*

164. The hens *go to roost* in the evening. The boy had gone a hunting, Cæsar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. Has not Cæsar sent the fourth legion *to fetch water*? Are not the boys gone<sup>29)</sup> a hunting? Cæsar has not-yet returned to *Rome*<sup>m</sup>. Cæsar had returned from Geneva to Rome. Balbus will go-away in the evening.

[Form the supine in u from *aud-ire* : *fac-ere* (159).]

Nonnē cubitum eunt gallinæ vespéri? Timida avis in summā quercu nidum construebat. Plato Tarrentum vénit. Servum Athēnas misérat. Caium Athēnas mittat<sup>30)</sup>. Jucundum est auditu. Difficile est factu (163). Nonnē sacerdōtes aram sanguīne adspersērunt! Sacerdōtis est, aras omnes victimārum sanguīne adspergere. Vēnit sacerdōs, ut aram sanguine adspergat.

*Lesson 35.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Active.*

1. 2. 3. 4.

165. Present (R.) ans, ens, ens, iens.

Perfect (none).

Future (ρ.) ūrus.

*Passive.*

Perfect (ρ.) us.

Future (or ‘participle of *necessity*;’ R.)

<sup>m</sup> ~~to~~ After a verb of motion, ‘*to*’ is never a sign of the *dative*, but is to be translated by *ad*.

But ‘*ad*’ is omitted before the names of *towns* and *small islands*.

When the place is a *town* or *small island*, the place *to which* is put in the *accusative*; the place *from which*, in the *ablative*.

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

165\*. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.  
The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*,  
*en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination to be desired : a crime to be abhorred.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by ‘about to (write);’ or, ‘going to (write).’

### 166. VOCABULARY 31.

R.	r.	p.	
frang;	frēg,	fract	(for fragt).
sparg,	spars,	spars	(for spargs).
adsperg,	adspers,	adspers	(for adspergs).
claud,	claus,	claus	(for clauds).
immerg,	immers,	immers	(for immerge).
rump,	rüp,	rupt.	

### Exercise n° 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded.  
Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Iimmersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semīna spargenda.  
Agricōla sparsūrus semīna. Violatūrus legem. Claudiens portas. Porta clausa. Semīna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersurus.

### Lesson 36.

### 168. VOCABULARY 32.

(Words that are construed like <i>proper names of towns</i> .)	
On the ground.	hūmi.
At home.	dōmi, fem.

<sup>n</sup> First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *oing* (159, 160), and to *frag* (see 105, 159, and 160); (2) by adding *s* to *merg*, *sparg*, *claud* (see 159); and (3) from the roots of *viol-are*, *habit-are* (by 159).

At my house,	dōmi meæ (At his own house, <i>domi suæ</i> ).
On service ; in the field,	militiæ.
Home,	dōmum (after verbs of motion).
From home,	dōmo.
In the country,	rūri, abl. (or, rure).
Into the country,	rūs ( <i>neut. acc.</i> ).
From the country	rūre.

Both <sup>o</sup> (adv.) et ; properly *and*.  
 Neither, neque, or nec, } neque is rather to be *pre-*  
 Nor, neque, or nec, } ferred before a vowel.  
 To sing, can-ēre (r. cēcīn ; p. cant).

169. (Eng.) Cæsar *having conquered* his enemies, &c.  
 (Lat.) Cæsar, *when he had conquered* his enemies, &c.  
 (or) Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, &c.  
 (a) Cæsar, *quum vicisset* hostes, &c.  
 (b) (or) Cæsar, *victis hostibus*, &c.

170. A substantive and participle are said to be put *absolutely*, when they are not *governed* by the verb, or any other word in the sentence.

☞ In Latin, words *put absolutely* are in the *ablative*.

(This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

171. Obs. ☞ The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense.

### Exercise 36.

172. Balbus *having crowned*<sup>p</sup> the boy's head with a garland, went away. The slave *having shut*<sup>q</sup> the gate of the city, is going to bed<sup>11</sup>. Cæsar having conquered his enemies (169, b) will return to *Rome*. The leaves are falling down *on the ground*. Cæsar is remaining at *his-own-house*. Balbus was with me<sup>r</sup>

<sup>o</sup> Thus instead of 'both Caius and Balbus,' the Romans said 'and Caius and Balbus' (*et Caius et Balbus*).

<sup>p</sup> Translate by 'when he had crowned.'

<sup>q</sup> Translate by 'the gate of the city being shut.'

<sup>r</sup> Obs. *Cum*, 'with,' is written *after*, and joined to, the *ablatives* of the personal pronouns (*mēcum*, *tēcum*, *nōbiscum*, &c.: not *cum me* nor *me cum*).

*both at home and on-service.* Balbus had lived *many years* in the country.

(What is *mecum* made up of?)

Balbus, *quum manus in aquam immersisset*, abiit. Folia nondum decidérant. Puer *Romam* mittendus est. Balbus nec<sup>\*</sup> domi nec militiæ *mecum* fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavěrit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus *Romam* rediērunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingěret. Sacerdos, *quum aras sanguine adspersisset*, abiit.

[Observe : in construing an *abative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that compounded with 'being.'

But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with 'having') governing the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning.]

*Fracto puëri brachio, abit.* Alexander, victo Dario, rediit. Avis, constructo in *summâ quercu* nido, canit. *Violatis* patriæ *lègibus*, vitâ<sup>24)</sup> indignus est. *Fundo* in tres partes *diviso*, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adspersâ sanguïne arâ, abiit. Caius, ruptis vinculis, evolavit. *Scriptâ epistolâ*, abiit.

### Lesson 37.

#### Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the *participle* in *dus.*)

\* In construing two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to borrow a 'not' from them for the verb, and then to construe them by either—or instead of neither—nor.

Thus, 'he was with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become 'he was *not* with me *either* yesterday *or* the day before.'

174. The gerund is translated by the '*participial substantive*' in 'ing.'

~~as~~ When what is in *form* the participle in *ing*, *governs* or *is governed*, but has nothing to *agree with*, it is the *participial substantive*.

175. The *gerund* is a *verbal substantive* of the neuter gender, but must borrow the infinitive mood for its *nominative*; it has no plural.

N.	(occidēre, <i>killing</i> .)		The Gerund governs a noun; in the same case, of course, as the verb it comes from.
G.	occidendi, <i>of killing</i> .		
D.	occidendo, <i>to or for killing</i> .		
Acc.	{(occidere) . . . . . accidendum, <i>when governed</i> } by a preposition.	killing.	
Abl.	occidendo, <i>by killing</i> .		

### 176. VOCABULARY 33.

Frugality,	parsimonia	( <i>parsimony</i> ).	
Science,	scientia.		
Superfluous ; unne-	{supervacuus (from <i>super</i> , <i>cessary</i> , above ; <i>vacuus</i> , empty).		
Expense,	sumptus, G. ūs	( <i>sumptuary laws</i> ).	
Nature,	natura.		
Desirous,	cupidus	( <i>cupidity</i> ).	
New,	novus	( <i>novelty</i> ).	
Art,	ars, G. artis.		
Skilful (in),	peritus (governs <i>gen.</i> ).		
Horse,	equus, i	( <i>equerry</i> ).	
Character,	mōres, G. morum, <i>pl.</i>	( <i>moralis</i> ).	
To see,	vid-ēre, vid, vis	( <i>visible</i> ).	
	r. p.		
To discover ; show,	de-tēg-ēre, tex,	tect	( <i>de-tect</i> ).
To play,	lūd-ēre,	lūs,	( <i>de-lude</i> ).
To teach,	doc-ēre,	docu,	( <i>doctor</i> ).
To tame ; master,	dōm-āre,	dōmu,	( <i>in-domitable</i> ).

177. (*Eng.*) Whilst they are playing.  
(*Lat.*) During playing (*inter ludendum*).

### Exercise 37.

178. Economy is the science of *avoiding* unnecessary expenses. Man is by nature desirous <sup>t</sup> of seeing and hearing new (things). Balbus is skilful in *mas*-

<sup>t</sup> Adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *recollection*, &c. (or their opposites) govern the *genitive*.

tering a horse. He is come to master<sup>29)</sup> the horse. The character of boys discovers itself whilst they are playing. He learns by teaching. How much pleasure<sup>4</sup> (there) is in learning !

Nonnē potest docendo discēre ! Cupīdi sunt docendi. *Sapientis est*<sup>1</sup> supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Discat<sup>30)</sup> puer supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Abeat *Romam*. Discat, ut docēre possit. *Quantum tempōris*<sup>4</sup> ludendo amisērunt ! Nemo mortem poterit vitare. Inviti vēnērant, ut Sullæ domum evertērent. Eversā Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt ? Puer cupīdus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrēpat a timendo confidēre.

### Lesson 38.

#### Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus (*Eng.*) The intention of writing a letter.  
 (*Lat.*) Consilium scribendæ epistōlam.  
 (or) Consilium scribendæ<sup>u</sup> epistōlæ.

181. Thus then, '*epistōla scribenda*' may be declined throughout.

##### *Sing.*

- N. Epistōla scribenda, a letter to be written.
- G. epistōlæ scribendæ, of writing a letter.
- D. epistōlæ scribendæ, to or for writing a letter.
- Acc. (ad) epistōlam scribendam, to write a letter (or for writing a letter).
- Abl. epistōlâ scribendâ, by writing a letter.

##### *Plur.*

- N. epistōlæ scribendæ, letters to be written.
- G. epistōlärum scribendärum, of writing letters.

<sup>u</sup> The real meaning of 'consilium epistōlæ scribendæ' is, 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

- D. epistōlis scribendis, *to or for writing letters*  
 Acc. (ad) epistōlas scribendas, *to write letters (or, for writing letters).*  
 Abl. epistōlis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

## 182. VOCABULARY 34.

[The forms following a verb are r. and p.]

Book,	liber, libri	(library).
Very fond,	studiōsus.	
Plato,	Plato, G. Platōnis.	
To retain,	{ re-tin-ēre, rētīnu, retent (re,   back; tenēre, hold). } (retentive).	
Barbarous,	barbārus.	
Custom,	consuetūd-o, G. īnis. Gender?	
To sacrifice <sup>v</sup> ,	im-mōlare	(immolate).
Fonder,	cupidi-or, G. ūris.	
To buy,	ēm-ēre, ēm, empt.	
To snatch ; seize <sup>w</sup> ,	{ arrīpēre, arrīpu, arrept (ad, to ; rapere, snatch).	
Opportunity,	occasi-o, G. ūnis. Gender?	
To practise,	exercēre.	
Desire,	cupidit-as, ātis	(cupidity).
To rule,	rēgēre, rex, rect	(di-reot).
War,	bellum.	
To carry on ; wage,	gēr-ēre, gess, gest.	
Time,	tempūs, ūris. Gender?	(temporal).

## Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond of writing letters. Demosthēnes was very-fond of hearing Plato. In the times of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom of sacrificing men. Seize every opportunity of practising virtue. Do not lose the opportunities of practising virtue. Nature has given us a desire of seeing the truth. The Romans were fond of waging war. Timotheus was skilful <sup>39)</sup> in governing a state.

[Obs. Any case of the partic. in *dus*, except the nominative, must be construed by the same case of the *participial substantive*; and the substantive it agrees with must stand as the accusative after it.]

<sup>v</sup> Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola salsa*) on the victim's head : ' from *in*, *on*, and *mola*.

<sup>w</sup> This verb, though of the third, follows the fourth in the *fect*, &c. as will be explained below. See note x.

Nonně fundum *ingenti pecuniā*<sup>21)</sup> ēměrat? Balous omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtutis* arripiēbat. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum*, quam *legendōrum*. Cæsar belli gerendi perītus fuit. Nonne mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) detěgunt?

### Lesson 39.

184. Obs. After 'is,' 'are,' and the other parts of the verb 'to be,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used as a participle of the future passive, to signify *duty, necessity, &c.*

185. Hence what is in form the *passive infinitive* is to be translated by the *participle in dus*, when it follows 'is,' 'are,' &c.

186. Virtus colenda est.  
Virtue to-be-cultivated is.  
[Virtue is to be cultivated.]

(☞ The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dus*; with other words it is generally governed in the *ablative* by *a* or *ab*.

### VOCABULARY 35.

By accident,	casu ; abl. of casus	(casual).
Some,	nonnulli, æ, a (non, not; nullus, none).	
To sharpen,	acuēre, acu, acūt	(acute).
Unprofitable,	inutilis (in, not; utilis, useful).	
A game,	lūsus, G. ūs.	
Inclined,	propensus	(propensity).
To understand,	intelligēre, intellex, intellect	(intelligence).
To do ; act,	agēre, ēg, act.	
Born,	nātus.	
To undertake,	{ sus-cipēre <sup>x</sup> , suscēp, suspect (sub, under; capere, take).	
To impel,	impellēre, impūl, impuls	(impulse).
	Not only — but also. Non solum — verum etiam.	
To spend (time, &c.),	{ impendēre, impend, impens (followed by dat. of participle in dus).	

<sup>x</sup> Some verbs of the *third* have the terminations of the *fourth* (in the parts hitherto given), except in the *imperfect subjunctive*, the *infinitive* and the *imperative*. Thus *arripēre* has *arripiēbat*, *arripiet*, *arripiat*, *arripiens*, *arripiendus*.

188. *Nē Balbus quidem.*

Not *Balbus* even (not even *Balbus*).

*Nē patrem quidem amat.*

Not *his father* even does he love!

Obs. 'Not' with 'even' (quidem), in the sentence, must be translated by *nē*; and *quidem* must follow the word to which the *even* belongs; the *nē* being put before that word.

### Exercise 39.

189. Every opportunity of practising virtue<sup>14</sup> is to be seized<sup>x</sup>. Even Caius did not seize every opportunity of practising virtue. The gate is to be shut *in the evening*<sup>12</sup>). Balbus having flown<sup>36)</sup> to the country<sup>37)</sup> from the town, bought an estate *for* an immense sum-of-money. The boys are fonder of playing than of learning. *How much time*<sup>4</sup> do they spend *in reading books*<sup>14?</sup> Let him buy the estate for a large sum-of-money.

[Obs. After *ad*, the *gerund* or *part.* *in dus* may be construed by the *infinitive*.]

Nemo est casu bonus: discenda est virtus. Sunt nonnulli *acuendis* puerōrum *ingeniis* non inutiles lusus. Non solum ad discendum propensi sunt, verum etiam ad docendum. Homo ad intelligendum et agendum natus est. Multa nos ad suscipiendum discendi labōrem impellunt. Multa impellunt Caium, *ut* discendi labōrem *suscipiat*<sup>x</sup>. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detexerant. Omnem dicendi\* elegantiam augēbit legendis oratoribus et poētis.

### Lesson 40.

#### Verbs followed by the dative.

190. Some verbs are followed by the *dative*, where we use no preposition; and should therefore be led by the English to put an *accusative*.

191. A *dative* put—remember pray—  
After *envy*, *spare*, *obey*,

\* See note, p. 61.

\* In speaking.

*Persuadē*, believe, command; to these  
 Add *pardon*, *succour*, and *displease*,  
 With *vacārē*, ‘to have leisure,’  
 And *placērē*, ‘to give pleasure :’  
 With *nubērē* (of the female said),  
 The English of it is ‘to wed :’  
*Servīrē* add, and add *studērē*,  
*Heal*, *favour*, *hurt*, *resist*, and *indulgērē*.

## 192. VOCABULARY 36.

Good for ; useful,	<i>utilis</i>	(utility).
Fit for,	<i>idōneus</i> ; governs <i>dative</i> .	
To envy,	{ <i>invidērē</i> , <i>invid</i> , <i>invis</i> (in, <i>into</i> ; { <i>vidērē</i> , <i>to see</i> ).	
To spare,	<i>parcērē</i> , <i>pēperc</i> .	
To obey,	<i>pārērē</i> .	
To believe,	<i>crēdērē</i> , <i>credīd</i> , <i>credīt</i>	(credible).
To pardon,	{ <i>ignoscērē</i> , <i>ignōv</i> (in, <i>not</i> ; <i>noscērē</i> , { <i>to know</i> ).	
To succour,	{ <i>succurrērē</i> <sup>y</sup> , <i>succurr</i> , <i>succurs</i> (sub, { <i>under</i> ; <i>currērē</i> , <i>to run</i> ). { <i>subvēnīrē</i> <sup>y</sup> , <i>subvēn</i> , <i>subvent</i> (sub, { <i>under</i> ; <i>venire</i> , <i>to come</i> ).	
To please,	<i>placērē</i> .	
To displease,	<i>displacērē</i> .	
To have leisure for,	<i>vacārē</i> .	
To marry (properly ‘to eel’),	{ <i>nubērē</i> , <i>nups</i> , <i>nupt</i>	(nuptials)
To command,	<i>impērārē</i> .	
To persuade,	{ <i>persuādērē</i> , <i>persuās</i> (per, <i>thoroughly</i> ; { <i>suadērē</i> , <i>advise</i> ).	

## Exercise 40.

193. How do you translate *not only—but also?* (187.)

194. *It is the duty of a Christian to envy nobody.*  
 Do not envy the good. It is pleasant to succour the  
 miserable. Atticus pleased me. Nobody will believe  
 the wicked. Death spares nobody. They had spared  
 the gate of the city. Portia will marry Caius. Dru-  
 silla married Caius *in the autumn*. He spares himself

<sup>y</sup> Of these, *succurrērē*, ‘to run to support,’ is stronger than *sub-  
vēnīrē*, ‘to come to support.’

in the winter. He does not spare even himself. He spares *not only* himself, *but also* his slave. You will never have persuaded me. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

195. Obs. *Est, sunt* may be construed 'must,' 'ought,' or 'should,' when they have a participle in *dus* with them; the part. in *dus* being translated by the *infin. passive*.

Cæsar legendo libro vacābit. Christiāni est patriæ suæ legib⁹bus parēre. Ignosce mihi. Nemo tibi credet. Imprōbus patriæ legib⁹bus non parēbit. Num legib⁹bus parēbunt imprōbi, violatā fide? Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

### *Lesson 41.*

196. The most common terminations of the persons in the active voice are:—

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
m,	s,	t.	mus,	tis,	nt.

197. By changing *t* into these terminations, we may get all the persons of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, and of *all the subjunctive*\*.

198. But observe the vowel before *mus, tis* is long in these tenses, except in the *perf. subjunctive*, in which it is common<sup>a</sup>.

### 199. VOCABULARY 37.

[Verbs governing the *dative* continued.]

To be the slave of,	servire, servi (or serviv), ser-
To devote oneself to ; aim at,	städere.
To hurt, injure,	nöcere.

\* Refer to the table in the Appendix, p. 116.

<sup>a</sup> That is, *long* or *short*. The old grammarians made it short in the *perf.*, *long* in the *fut. perfect*.

To resist,	resistēre, restīt.
To favour,	favēre, fāv, faut.
To indulge ; humour,	indulgēre, induls.

*Exercise 41. [See question 28, p. 131.]*

200. I would have favoured Caius. You would have resisted anger. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. We would have indulged the desire. I was hurting myself. You were hurting me. You were flaying the sheep, not shearing (them). Come *to shut* the gates of the city. Was he come, *to shut* the gates of the city? You had hurt Caius. You had been-the-slave-of passion. Do not be-the-slave-of passion. You were come *to surround* the girl's head with a crown. He had displeased Caius. You were sparing the enemies.

[What is the *imperative* of *vēnire*? What tense is used as an *imperative*? (The subj. present.)]

Violābas legem. Barbāram consuetudinē immo-  
landōrum hominū retinuissētis. Iræ *multos annos* serviēras. Ne violētis fidem. Portas urbis ne clau-  
dātis. Vēni, ut mihi succurras. Regendis animi  
cupiditatibus studeāmus. Homo magna habet adju-  
menta ad obtinendam sapientiam. Tondendæ sunt  
oves, non deglubendæ. Nonnē claudendæ sunt urbis  
portæ? Exercenda est virtus.

*Lesson 42.*

201. '*Is*,' properly '*that*,' is used for *he*, *she*, *it*, plur. *they*<sup>b</sup>, when they do not mean the *same person or thing* that the nominative case means.

202. '*Is*' has neuter *id*.

The other cases are formed *as if* from '*eus*, *ea*, *cum*', making the gen. *eius*, written *ējus*, and dat. *ei*.

<sup>b</sup> *Is*, 'that person' = *he*.  
*Ea*, 'that female' = *she*. &c.

But in the plural, the *nominative* and the *dative* are generally *ii*, and *iis*, instead of *eis*<sup>c</sup>.

### 203. VOCABULARY 38.

Long,	diu.	Longer, <i>diutius</i> .
To sin,	peccāre.	
To recal,	revocāre.	
King,	rex, rēgis.	
Literature,	litterae (plur.).	
So,	tam.	
So great,	tantus.	
Multitude,	multitud-o, G. ūnis.	
To count,	nūmērare.	
Star,	stella	(con-stella-tion).

204. Si diutius vixisset, neminem habuisset parem.

*If longer he had lived, nobody he would have had equal.*

*(If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.)*

205. Obs. ☛ After 'if' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

### Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given me<sup>22)</sup> an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be alive<sup>d</sup>. *So-great* is the multitude of the stars, that<sup>31)</sup> you cannot count them. I would have pardoned you, if you had done that. They were aiming at recalling the kings<sup>42)</sup>.

<sup>c</sup> Hence the cases are,

Is, ea, id : G. ējus : D. ei : Acc. eum, eam, id : Abl. eo, eā, eo.

Plur. ii, eæ, eā : G. eōrum, eārum, eōrum : D. and Abl. iis (or eis) : Acc. eos, eas, eā.

Obs. When *his*, *her*, *its*; *theirs*, are to be translated by 'is,' they are translated by the genitive.

When *his*, *her*, *its*; *theirs*, are translated by *suis*, *suis* must agree with its substantive.

*Ejus libri*, *his books*; *eōrum libri*, *their books*; *sui libri*, *his or their books*

<sup>d</sup> Translate as if it were 'they would live.'

[When the pluperf. subjunctive has *si*, it must be translated by 'had,' not by 'would have.']}

Peccavissent, si id fecissent. Pareat anīmus, non impēret\*. Nonnē Caius scribendæ epistōlæ vācavit? Patriam auro, si potuisses, vendidisses. Nonnē mores puerōrum se *inter ludendum* detēgunt? Malus pastor deglupsisset oves, non totondisset. Si oratōres et poētas legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi.

### Lesson 43.

207. *Sing.* Mihi<sup>f</sup> scribendum est, *I must or should write.*  
*Tibi* scribendum est, *you must or should write.*  
*Illi* scribendum est, *he must or should write.*  
*Plur.* Nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write.*  
*Vobis* scribendum est, *you must or should write.*  
*Illis* scribendum est, *they must or should write.*
208. (*Eng.*) I must (or should) write.  
(*Lat.*) It is *to-be-written* by me.
209. ( $\leftarrow$ ) After the part. in *dus*, the person *by whom* is put in the *dative*.  
(a) If *we* or *you* means 'every body,' or 'people in general,' the pronoun is left out.  
(b) Hence '*edendum est*' is { 'we should eat,'  
(c) The dative is also left out, whenever the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

### Exercise 43.

210. Caius<sup>g</sup> must not sleep. (We) must remain at *Rome* the whole winter<sup>12)</sup>. We must live well. We must dwell *in the country*. We must remain *at home*. We must fly from the city (into) the coun-

\* The auxiliary verb is omitted with the second of two verbs. Not, 'let him come, and let him take it ;' but, 'let him come and take it.'

<sup>f</sup> Explanation. The real meaning of '*scribendum est mihi*' is, 'it is to-be-written by me.'

<sup>g</sup> In doing the exercise, remember,

(1.) That the English nominative is to be put in the dative, if a particular person (or persons) is meant; but left untranslated, if what is said holds good of people in general.

(2.) The participle in *dus* is to be formed from the verb, and written down in the neuter gender with *est*.

try<sup>37)</sup>. The wicked *think little of*<sup>s</sup> virtue. Does not the avaricious man *value* money *very highly*<sup>2</sup>? Will a Christian fear death? [No.]

Evolandum est ex urbe. Manendum est Romæ. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. Quiescendum est, ut vitam conservēmus. Ambulandum est per urbem. Laborandum est, ut discas. Discrēpat a ludendo laborare. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? Num semper ludendum est? Epistola suâ manu scribenda est. Crabrōnes non sunt irritandi. Crabrōnem ne irrītes. Irritasne crabrōnem?

### Lesson 44.

211. The third persons of the *pres.* and *imperf. subj.* of *esse* (*to be*) are *sit*, *esset*, from which the other persons may be formed by 196.

212. Pres. *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, | *simus*, *sitis*, *sint*.  
Imperf. *essem*, *esses*, *esset*, | *essēmus*, *essētis*, *essent*.

213. From these forms those of *posse* may be got, as before explained: 149.

Present subj. *possit*. [(that) he *may be able*.]  
Imperf. subj. *posset*. [(that) he *might be able*.]

### 214. VOCABULARY 39.

Self,		
I myself,		
You yourself,		
Itself, &c.		
To fight,	pugnāre	( <i>pugnacious</i> ).
Rightly; well,	rectē; <i>adv.</i> from <i>rectus</i> , right.	
To hold one's tongue,	tacēre	( <i>tacit consent</i> ).
Even,		
	{ etiam; placed before the word it belongs to.	
Bad,	malus.	
Crop,	sēgēs, segēt-is, f.	
To sow,	sērēre, sev, sät.	

h ‘*Ipse*’ is declined throughout as if it were *ipsum*, making Gen. *īus*. *Ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, G. *ipsius*, D. *ipsi*, Acc. *ipsum*, *ipsam*, *ipsum*, &c. It must be construed as ‘*I myself*’ when the verb is of the first person; ‘*you yourself*’, when the verb is of the second person.

But ~~as~~ it is better sometimes to place the ‘*myself*’, ‘*yourself*’, after the verb and its *accusative*, &c. ‘*I was breaking the law myself*’.

## Exercise 44.

215. The unlearned must labour, that they may learn. Is it *the business*<sup>1</sup> of a shepherd to scatter seeds? [No.] The boy must rest, that he may-be-able to play. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. Boys must hold-their-tongues. The girls must walk through the city. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price.

Imprōbis<sup>1</sup> metuendum est. Discendum est<sup>k</sup>, ut possis docēre. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre. Tacendum est. Etiam post malam segētem serendum est. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniā ēmēras? Nonne Christianōrum est misēris succurrēre? Scriptā epistōlā, legit.

## Lesson 45.

216. If the verb governs *the dative* (191), ‘we’ or ‘you’ should be untranslated<sup>1</sup>:

Credendum est Caio.

We should believe Caius. (Not, ‘Caius should believe.’)

## 217. VOCABULARY 40.

Sea-water ; salt water,	aqua marīna.	
To invent,	iu-vēnīre <sup>m</sup> , vēn, vent	(intention).
Lust,	lubid-o, G. ūnis.	Gender?

<sup>1</sup> (a) To read off such sentences *at sight*, take the *dative* as the nominative to ‘should’ or ‘must’; and add the verb unaltered:

Omnibus, all men must, moriendum est, die.

(b) If no *dative* is expressed, put ‘we’ or ‘you’ for the nominative before ‘must’.

<sup>k</sup> If the next verb is of the *second person*, put *you* for the nom. of *must*.

<sup>1</sup> If it be necessary to express the *agent* (the person *who is to do the action*), it must be either expressed by the preposition *a* (or *ab*) ; or the form of the expression must be altered. The two datives would leave it doubtful which expressed the agent.

<sup>m</sup> From in, upon ; venire, to come.

Old man,	sēnēx, G. sēnēs, G. plur. sēnum	(senility).
Ignorant,	ignārus. (See 178, t.)	
To abstain (from),	abstīnēre	(abstinence *).

### Exercise 45.

218. We should spare the conquered. We should injure nobody. We should resist anger. Should we not resist anger? We should envy nobody. We should obey the laws of our country. We should succour the miserable. We must not spare even Balbus. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. We must not believe even Cæsar himself†. We must injure neither the good nor the bad. Having written his letter (169, b), he will go a-hunting. He has flown into the country<sup>37)</sup> to go<sup>28)</sup> a-hunting. We must go to Rome. We must fly out of the country into the city.

Aqua marīna inutīlis est bibendo. Nonne resistendum est<sup>n</sup> iræ? Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. Artem scribendi Phœnices<sup>o</sup> invēnērunt. Semper pugnandum est contra cupiditātes et lubidīnem. Etiam senībus discendum est. Inutiles sunt libri ignāro legendi. Num puēri regendæ civitatis periti esse possunt? Abstinendum est in honestis voluptatibus. Nonne resistendum est animo? Num credendum est imprōbis?

\* Governs the *abl.* of the thing from which.

† Ne Cæsari quidem ipsi, which must begin the sentence.

<sup>n</sup> When there is only one dative to a verb which governs the dative, supply 'we' as the nominative to 'must,' 'should,' and put the dative (of course, without a preposition) after the verb.

<sup>o</sup> The Phœnicians.

## Lesson \* 46.

219. If the Latin verb is a *transitive verb* governing the accusative (8), we must not *govern* this accusative by the neuter participle; but the *acc.* must be made the *nominative*, and the participle in *dus* put in agreement with it:

We must cultivate virtue, { *Colenda est virtus.*  
Not, *colendum est virtutem.*

220. To determine whether you should put the *part.* in *dus* in the neut. *governing* the noun, or *in agreement* with the nominative of that noun, ask yourself two questions:

(1) Can I turn the sentence into the form 'Virtue is to-be-loved p?'

(2) If you *can*, ask yourself whether the verb is one of those which govern the dative (191).

(If the verb governs the *dat.*, the *dative* must be retained, and the *participle in dus* put in the *neuter*. The *dative*, that is, *must not* become the nominative to the verb <sup>q.</sup>)

221. ⇝ 'Of,' after 'rob,' 'defraud,' 'deprive,'  
Is but a sign of ablative<sup>r.</sup>

\* The *present* and *fut. perfect* have their first pers. sing. in *o*.  
The *fut.* has its first sing. in *o* in the *two first* conjugations:

Present, o,	ās,	āt,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
eo,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
ō,	īs,	īt,	īmus,	ītis,	unt.
io,	īs,	īt,	īmus,	ītis,	iunt.
Future, ābo,	ābis,	ābit,	ābīmus,	ābītis,	ābunt.
ēbo,	ēbis,	ēbit,	ēbīmus,	ēbītis,	ēbunt.
am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
iam,	īes,	īt,	īēmus,	īētis,	ient.
Future Perf. (r), ēro,	ēris,	ērit,	{ ērimus, or } ērītis, or { ērimus,	ērītis,	ērint.

P If you answer 'No' to this question, you need not ask yourself the second, except for the purpose of determining *what case* is to be used after the verb.

q Thus, 'we must spare our enemies.'

(1.) Can we say, 'our enemies are to-be-spared?' Ans. Yes.

(2.) Does 'to spare' govern the dative in Latin? Ans. Yes.

We must therefore *not* say 'inimici parcedi sunt'; but (leaving to *parcere* the dative it requires) say, 'parcendum est inimicis.'

<sup>r</sup> That is, 'of' is not to be translated, but to serve as a *sign* or *hint* that the following noun is to be in the *ablative*.

## 222. VOCABULARY 41.

To rob,	spoliāre.	(spoliation).
To defraud,	fraudāre.	
To deprive,	privāre.	
To deceive,	decipēre <sup>s</sup> , decēp, decept	(deception).
To remove (for the purpose of settling elsewhere),	migrāre	(emigrant).
Because,	quia.	
Eye,	ōcūlus, i	(oculist).
Apollo,	{ Apoll-o, Inis (son of Jupiter and Latōna ; the heathen god of archery, prophecy, and music).	
Hunger,	fam-es, G. is	(famished).
Temple,	templum.	
Grain,	grānum.	
One,	ūnus, G. unīus, &c.	(unit).
Poor,	paupēr, G. paupēris	(pauper).
Judge,	jūdex, jūdīcis	(judicial).
Before, preposition,	ante (governing acc.).	
Before, conjunction*,	antēquam, priusquam.	
Before, adverb,	antea.	

Obs. In *antēquam*, *priusquam*, the words are often separated; *ante—quam*, *prius—quam*.

## Exercise 46.

[The pres. subj. is used as an imperative.]

223. We should favour the good. We should believe Caius, because he has never deceived us. We must surround the boy's head with a crown. We must shut the gate of the city *in the evening*. Do not defraud (*plur.*) me of my praise. Do not deprive me of my eyes. Having written his letter (169, a), he *went to bed*. Do not the wicked deprive virtue herself of her praise? You are depriving (*pl.*) me of my

<sup>s</sup> From *de*, from; *capēre*, take: this verb is one of those which prefix an *i* to the termination (that is, take the terminations of the fourth) except in the *present infinitive*, and the two tenses which we have shown how to get from the *present infinitive*; that is, the *imperf. subjunctive* and the *imperative*. See 187, x. In the *pres. indic.* they follow the *fourth*, but have *i* short (*io*, *is*, *it*, *īmus*, *ītis*, *īunt*). See 22, p. 120.

\* Or *conjunctional adverb*; standing *first* in its sentence, and connecting it with another sentence.

praise. Will you break the laws of your country? Virtue must be cultivated, that you may live well and happily. (*Translate as if it were*, may-be-able to live.)

[When 'ante' or 'prius' is in one sentence, and the next begins with 'quam,' take no notice of the word till you get to 'quam,' and translate *ante-quam*, *prius-quam* by 'before.' ]

Non est *ante* edendum, *quam* fames impērat. Apollinis templum omni argento spoliāvit. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. Ne me luce privētis. Oculis nō me, judices, privabītis? Ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt paupēres. Athēnis habitandum est, ut discāmus recte vivēre. Romam migrandum est, ut discātis civitātem regere. Etiam post malam segētem serēmus. Leges patriae violātis. Violātis patriae legib⁹ (169), mēa me laude spoliātis. Num mēa me laude spoliabītis? Dicendi elegantia legendis oratoribus et poētis augenda est.

### *Lesson 47.*

#### 224.

#### Infinitive Mood.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	
Present, }	ārē	ērē	ĕrē	īrē	(Active)
Imperf. }	ārī.	ērī	ī	īrī	(Passive)
Perfect, }	issē	.	.	.	(Active)
Pluperf. }	past partic. with <i>esse</i> 'to be'				(Passive).

(a) The *future infinitive active* is made up, as in English, of 'to be,' with the *future participle active*.

In the *passive*, the *future infinitive* is made up of the *supine* with *iri*.

(b) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre*, *am-av-isse*; *amatūrum esse*, *amātum esse*, and *amātum iri*.

225. The infinitives made up of *two words* are called *compound infinitives*.

(3) The *participles* of the compound infinitives \* must *agree* with their substantives ; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*.

- (a) *Videt te esse beatum.*  
*He sees that you are happy.*
- (b) *Sperat se victūrum esse.*  
*He hopes that he shall live.*

226. Two English sentences joined by the conjunction 'that' are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive*.

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,

- (1) Take no notice of 'that' ;
- (2) Translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative* ;
- (3) Translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the same tense.

#### Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labours *very highly*. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed to *Athens*, that he may learn to live well. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned to *death*.

Certum est, in summis Alpibus tantum esse frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquefaciat. Certum est, stellārum tantam esse multitudinem, ut numerari non possint. Certum est, Balbum patriam auro vendidisse. Certum est, avem in summā quercu nidum constructuram esse. Certum est Cæsarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superavērit.

\* They are set down in the *acc. msc.*

## Lesson 48.

*Forms of the Passive.* (Tenses from the root of the present.)

229. The third persons of the passive are formed from the third persons of the active by adding *ur<sup>t</sup>*.

(a) But the vowel before the *t* is *long*, except from *it* (of the *third*), *ābit*, and *ēbit*.

230. ~~(☞)~~ The *Imperative* pass. is like the *infinitive active*.

## 231. VOCABULARY 42.

To beg for,	} pētērē <u>u</u> , pētīv, pētīt	(petition).
To make for <u>u</u> ,		
To pray, pray for,	ōrārē.	
Ambassador,		
Lieutenant*,	} legatus	(the Pope's legate).
Ship,	nāv-is, is	(navy).
To consult,	consūlērē, consūlu,	consult.

## 232. Abit visūrus.

*He goes away to see.*

(Eng.) He goes to see.

(Lat. sometimes) He goes about-to-see v (part. in *rūs*).

<sup>t</sup> Thus, Indicative,

1. 2. 3. 4.

Present, at,	et,	it,	it,	1. àtur,	2. ètur,	3. ïtur,	4. ïtur.
Imperfect, ābat,	ēbat,	ēbat,	iēbat,	ābātur,	ēbātur,	ēbātur,	iēbātur.
Future, ābit,	ēbit,	et,	iet,	ābītur,	ēbītur,	ètur,	iētūr.

*Subjunct.*

Present, et, eat, at, iat,

ètur, eātūr, àtur, iātūr.

Imperfect, āret, ēret, èret, iret,

àrētūr, èrētūr, èrētūr, iñrētūr.

Infinitive, ãri, èri, i, ïri.

Imperative (like *Infin. act.*) ãre, ère, ère, ïre.

The third persons plural are formed from the corresponding third persons plural of the active, by adding 'ur' without any further change.

~~☞~~ The third sing. of the imperfect subjunct. may also be got by adding *tur* to the *infin. act.* with its final *s* lengthened.

1. 2. 3. 4.

Inf. pres., ãre, èrē, èrē, ïrē.

Imp. subj., ãrē-tur, èrē-tur, èrē-tur, ïrē-tur.

<sup>u</sup> *Pētērē* expresses the *moving towards* or *aiming at* some object; whether the motion is actual motion towards a place, or a movement of the mind towards that for which it *sues*.

\* By 'lieutenant' is meant the *second in command*: a lieutenant-general.

<sup>v</sup> Or, 'intending to see,' which is often the meaning of this participle.

## Exercise 48.

The English *infinitive* expressing the *purpose*, may often be translated by the *future participle*.

233. Ambassadors are sent to beg for peace<sup>18, b)</sup>. Ambassadors will be sent, to pray for peace<sup>18, b)</sup>. He goes away to consult<sup>18, c)</sup> Apollo. The law will be broken. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked both at Rome and at Athens. Let your word be kept. We must remove to Rome, that our faith may be kept. Money must not be valued at a great price. Let the state be ruled by the wise. The Persians<sup>w</sup> make-for their ships.

[Obs. The participle in *sus* may often be translated by the *English infinitive*.]

Cæsar Romam rediit, copias *quam maximas*<sup>o</sup> comparatūrus. Patrem suum consultūrus, abit. Mittantur legāti, pacem petītum. Virtus ab omnībus colātur<sup>so</sup>. Omnis occasio exercendæ virtūtis arripiātur. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendæ virtūtis a Christiāno arripi. Paupēres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legēdis oratoribus et poetis. Abiit dormiturus.

## Lesson 49.

234. Relative Pronoun. (*Qui, who, which, that.*)

*Singular.*

N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.	G.	D.	Abl.	Acc.
Mas.	Qui,	cujus,	cui,	quem,	quo,	qui,	quōrum,	quībūs,	quos.
Fem.	Quæ,			quam,	quā,	quæ,	quārum,		quas.
Neut.	Quod,			quod,	quo,	quæ,	quōrum,		quæ.

*Plural.*


235. (☞) The *substantive* (or *pronoun*) that the relative stands for, is to be looked for in the sentence before.

\* Persæ, G. Persarum.

(a) The relative must be put in the same *gender*, *number*, and *person*, as its *antecedent*<sup>x</sup>.

236. ↗ The *case* of the relative has *nothing to do* with the other sentence.

↗ The relative must be *governed*, as to *case*, by the verb (or some other *governing word*) of *its own sentence*<sup>y</sup>.

↗ *Is, ea, id*, is the regular antecedent pronoun to *qui*.

237. ↗ The verbs which govern the *dative* in the *active*, can only be used *impersonally*<sup>z</sup> in the *passive*.

Mihi creditur <sup>a</sup> ,	I am believed.
Tibi creditur,	Thou art believed.
Illi creditur,	He is believed.
Nobis creditur,	We are believed.
Vobis creditur,	You are believed.
Illis creditur,	They are believed.

### 238. VOCABULARY 43.

No,	nullus, <i>G.</i> nullius	(null and void).
Animal,	animal <sup>b</sup> , <i>G.</i> animālis.	Gender?
Heart,	cor, <i>G.</i> cordis, n.	(cordial).
Tree,	arbor, <i>G.</i> arbōris, f.	(arbour).
Fruit,	fructus, <i>G.</i> ūs	(fructify).
To behold,	adspicēre, adspex, adspect	(aspect).

### Exercise \* 49.

239. The good are envied. Have you not spared

<sup>x</sup> The *ante-cedent* (that is, *going-before* noun) is the substantive or pronoun for which the relative stands.

<sup>y</sup> The use of the relative is, to prevent the same substantive from being expressed in each clause.

The apple which you gave me. (The apple, *which apple* you gave me.) The mountain on *whose* top, &c. (The mountain, on the top of *which mountain*.) The man *who* did this, &c. (The man, *which man* did this.)

<sup>z</sup> To be used *impersonally* is, to be used only in the *third person singular*, and without a nominative case.

\* Hence,

(Eng.) I am pardoned, favoured, persuaded, &c.

(Lat.) It is pardoned, favoured, persuaded to me.

<sup>b</sup> Neuters in *e, al, ar*, make their ablatives in *i*; nom. plur. *ia*; gen. *iam*.

\* The *second person* plural of the imperative may be got by adding

the conquered! He gave me the crown, with which he had surrounded the girl's head. Let anger be resisted, which has been prejudicial to many states. Caius, who sold his country for gold, should be condemned *to death*. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treachery. Caius, whose mother lives<sup>c</sup> in the country, has himself removed to Rome. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered.

[When a *pass.* verb is one that governs the *dative*, take this *dat.* as if it were the *nomin.* to the verb.]

Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. Arbores serit agricola, quārum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Pauperibus, qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniamus. Parcatur victis. Pepercisti victis. Caio ignoscite. Violavistis fidem. Iræ resistitur. Nihil facile persuadetur invitatis.

---

### Lesson 50.

240. ‘*He who*,’ ‘*those who*,’ are generally translated by ‘*qui*’ only, instead of by ‘*is qui*,’ ‘*ii qui*.’

241. A deponent verb is a verb that has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

242. Deponent verbs have all the four participles.

☞ The past participle of a deponent verb is the participles of the *perfect active*, which other verbs have not got.

[(1) *Loquens*, speaking : (2) *locutus*, having spoken : (3) *locuturus*, about to speak : (4) *loquendus*, to be spoken.]

---

to the second singular ; but in the third, § must be changed into t before this addition is made.

1.	2.	3.	4.
āte,	ēte,	īte,	īte.

The terminations of the perfect are for all the conjugations :

i, ē	isti, ēsti	it ēt	imus, ēmus
---------	---------------	----------	---------------

istis, ēstis	ētis		ērunt.
-----------------	------	--	--------

• Dwells, habitat.

## 243. VOCABULARY 44.

To recollect,	reminisci.
To remember,	recordari.
To enjoy,	frui.
To use,	ūti, ūsus.
To discharge,	fungi, functus.
To get possession,	potiri, potītus ( <i>but pōlitur</i> ).
To pity,	miserēri.
To forget,	oblivisci, oblitus.
A benefit,	beneficium.
An injury,	injūria.
Duty,	officium.
Arms,	arma, G. ūrum.
Some time or other,	aliquando.
Eternal,	sempiternus.
Crime,	flagitium ( <i>flagitious</i> ).

244. After *to* 'pity,' 'remember,' 'forget,'  
A genitive case is properly set<sup>d</sup>.

245. With 'use,' 'discharge,' 'possession get,' and also with  
'enjoy,'  
An ablative correctly stands: remember this, my boy.

## Exercise 50.

246. *H*o who sins *unwillingly*, is free from blame. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. Let us use our arms and horses. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? Is the life, *that* we now enjoy, eternal? Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life.

Christianōrum est miserēri paupērum. Homo im-prōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. Vincāmus odium, paceque potiāmur. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. Beātus est, qui omnībus vitæ officiis fungit. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

<sup>d</sup> But 'remember' and 'forget' often govern the accusative.

## Lesson 51.

247. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* of the *mas.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*.

[*Doctus, doct-iōr; sapiens, G. sapient-is, sapient-iōr;*  
*tener, tener-iōr<sup>e</sup>; pulcher (pulchr), pulchr-iōr<sup>e</sup>.*]

248. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(a) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rīmus* (*a, um*) to the nominative.

(*Pulcher, pulcherrīmus.*)

249. *Similis* (*like*), *facīlis* (*easy*), and a few more in *lis*, make the superlative in *līmus*.

(*Simillīmus, facillīmus.*)

250. The following are quite irregular :—

Bonus ( <i>good</i> ), melior, optimus.	magnus ( <i>great</i> ), major, maxīmus.
Malus ( <i>bad</i> ), pejor, pessimus.	parvus ( <i>little</i> ), minor, minīmus.

## 251. VOCABULARY 45.

Air,	aēr, <i>G. aēris, m.</i>	
Light,	lēvis	
Heavy,	grāvis	{ <i>gravity</i> }.
It is well known,	} constat <sup>f</sup> .	
It is allowed,		
It is better,	præstat (præ, <i>before</i> : stat, <i>it stands</i> ).	
Sound,	sonus, <i>G. i.</i>	
Swift,	vēl-ox, <i>G. ōcis</i>	{ <i>velocity</i> }.
Slow,	tardus	{ <i>tardy</i> }.
Summer,	āest-as, <i>G. ātis.</i>	
Dog,	cānis.	
Wolf,	lūpus, <i>G. i.</i>	
The moon,	lūna.	
Nearer,	propior (with dat.).	
Excellent,	præstan-s, <i>G. tis.</i>	
Strength,	rōbūr, <i>G. robōr-is.</i> <i>Gender?</i>	
Ignorance,	ignoratio.	

<sup>e</sup> Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root ; the preceding *e* being often dropped.

<sup>f</sup> Con, together, stat, it stands : ‘it stands together’ as a consistent truth.

Knowledge,	scientia.	
To speak,	lōqui, lōcūtus	(e-locution).
Simple,	simplex, G. simplic-is.	
Wealth,	ōpes, G. opum ; plur.	

252. Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.

*Europe less is than Asia.*

Nihil est clementiā divinius.

*Nothing is than clemency more godlike.*

*(Nothing is more godlike than clemency.)*

253. (☞) ‘*Than*,’ after a comparative, is either translated by *quam*, or omitted, the following noun being put in the *ablative*.

(a) If ‘*quam*’ is expressed, the following noun will, of course, be in the *same case* as that to which ‘*quam*’ joins it.

### *Exercise 51.*

254. (*Quam* expressed.) Air is lighter than water. It is well known that light is swifter than sound.

(*Quam* omitted.) In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Silver is lighter than gold. Is not silver lighter than gold? Is it not well known, that sound is slower than light? Is not a dog very-like a wolf?

Aurum gravius est argento. Luna terrae propior est, quam sol. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. Virtus præstantior est robore. Ignoratio futurōrum malōrum utilior est, quam scientia. Majus est prodesse omnibus, quam opes magnas habere. Certum est solem majōrem esse quam terram. Saepē facere præstat quam loqui. Simplex cibus puēris utilissimus est.

## Lesson 52.

## 255. VOCABULARY 46.

[Prepositions governing the accusative.]

Ad,	to.
Adversus,	against, towards. ( <i>See erga.</i> )
Ante,	before.
Apud,	{ at : before a plural name of persons, amongst. Apud me, 'with me,' that is, 'at my house.'
Circa,	about (of time and place).
Circum,	about (of place only).
Cis, citra,	on this side of.
Contra,	against : over-against.
Erga,	{ towards (not of motion; but after words expressing a kind <i>feeling</i> , a <i>duty</i> , &c.).
Extra,	{ without (in the sense of <i>not within</i> ), out of ; beyond.
Inter,	{ amongst (inter se, 'to each other <sup>g</sup> '), be- tween.
Intra,	within.

To observe ( <i>duties</i> ),	conservâre	(conservative).
To move ( <i>transitive</i> ),	mövâre, möv, möt.	
To move ( <i>intransitive</i> ),	mövâri, mötus :	properly 'to be moved.'
Saturn,	{ Saturnus,	father of Jupiter, by whom he was dethroned. He devoured his own children.
Jupiter,	{ Jüpiter <sup>h</sup> ,	Gen. Jovis (and then formed regularly from <i>Jov</i> ), the king of the hea- then gods.
The moon,	luna.	
Dutiful-affection,	piëtâs, G. âtis.	
The Rhine,	Rhênum, i.	

256. Maris superficies major est, quam  
*The sea's surface greater is than* (that<sup>1</sup>)  
*terræ.*  
*of the earth.*

257. When the same noun would be expressed in both clauses, it is left out in that which follows *quam* (*than*).

<sup>g</sup> After contrarius, *contrary*, &c.<sup>h</sup> Jupiter and Saturn are two of the planets.<sup>1</sup> Here 'that' stands for 'the surface.'

- a) In English it is represented in the second clause by 'that,' 'those.' Hence,  
 (b) ~~or~~ 'That,' 'those,' after 'than,' are to be untranslated.

### *Exercise 52.*

258. (Our) duties towards (our) parents are to be observed. Do many come to old age? We must fight against the evils of old age. *It is an allowed fact,* that the earth moves round the sun. Your benefits are greater than *those* of your brother. Is not simple food very good for boys? Let us be gentle towards the conquered. The star of Jupiter is nearer the earth than that of Saturn.

Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. Nulla habēmus arma contra mortem. Patrium habet adversus bonos viros anīmum. Luna circum terram movētur. Nulla est firma amicitia inter malos. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. Jovis stella infra Saturnum est. Galli cis Rhenum habitānt. Pisces extra aquam cito exspirant. Intra muros habitābat. Inter se contraria\* sunt beneficium et injuria.

### *Lesson 53.*

259. 'May' and 'might' (when they stand in a *principal* sentence) are translated by *licet*, 'it is allowed.'

260.      *May*, licet    (= *it is allowed*).  
               *Might*, licuit    (= *it was allowed*).

261.	Mihi ire licet,	<i>I may go.</i>
	Tibi ire licet,	<i>You may go.</i>
	Illi ire licet,	<i>He may go.</i>
	Nobis ire licet,	<i>We may go.</i>
	Vobis ire licet,	<i>You may go.</i>
	Illis ire licet,	<i>They may go.</i>

\* When an adjective agrees with two nouns it is in the plural; here, as they are the names of things, it is in the *nouter* gender.

262. Mihi ire licuit,  
Tibi ire licuit,  
&c. &c.
- I might have gone.  
You might have gone.*

263. (☞) The present infinitive follows 'licuit,' in spite of 'have.'

264. (Eng.) I may go. (Lat.) it is allowed me to go.  
(Eng.) I might have gone. (Lat.) it was allowed me (then) to go.

## 265. VOCABULARY 47.

[Prepositions governing the accusative, continued.]

Juxta,	close to ; by.
Ob,	on account of (ob očílos, before one's eyes).
Pěnčs,	in the power of.
Per,	through ; by means of.
Pōnč,	behind.
Post,	after.
Præter,	besides, beyond.
Propter,	near ; on account of.
Secundum,	along ; according to.
Supra,	above.
Trans,	across, beyond ; on the other side of.
Ultrā,	beyond.
Usque,	as far as (properly an adverb, used with ad.).

Fear,	mětus, G. metús.
Shore,	litús, ör-is. <i>Gender?</i>
A camp,	castr-a, örum, plur.
To place,	pōněre, pōsü, pōsít
Journey ; way,	iter, G. itinér-is, neut. (position). (itinerant).

266. He 'threatens me with death,' should be  
In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'  
(Mihi mortem minātur.)

## Exercise 53.

[☞ When the answer 'yes' cannot possibly be expected, 'an' should be used rather than 'num' (153) for the interrogative adverb.]

267. A man may not be-the-slave of glory. A Christian may not be-the-slave of pleasure. May Christians be-the-slaves of pleasure? We must not be-the-slaves of anger. Might he not have dwelt at Rome? No one may break the laws of his country. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. We must

remove across the Rhine, that we may learn to devote ourselves to literature.

Servi parent propter metum ; boni propter officium. Navigatio juxta litus s<sup>e</sup>pe est periculosa. C<sup>a</sup>esar juxta murum castra posuit. Supra nos coelum conspicimus ; infra nos terram. Longum iter est per praecepta ; breve<sup>k</sup> et efficax per exempla. Secundum leges vivendum est. Condita Massilia est prope ostia Rhodani amnis. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie imminet. Nonne licuit Athenis habitare ? Janus<sup>l</sup> bis post Numae<sup>m</sup> regnum clausus fuit. Nonne mortem tibi minabatur ? Imperium populorum est penes magistratus.

### *Lesson 54.*

(*On the translation of ought.*)

268. ‘Ought’ is translated by the *impersonal verb ‘oportet,’ ‘it behoves.’*

269. Me ire oportet,      *I ought to go.*  
Te ire oportet,      *You ought to go.*  
                        &c.

Me ire oportuit,      *I ought to have gone.*  
Te ire oportuit,      *You ought to have gone.*  
                        &c.

270. Obs. When the *infinit. perfect* follows ‘ought,’ *ought* is to be translated by *oportuit*, and the *perfect infinitive* translated by the *present infinitive*.

271. So too after ‘could,’ the *perfect infinitive* (which will be without ‘to’) will be translated by the *present infinitive*.  
[*Facere potuit, he could have done (it).*]

<sup>k</sup> Of two connected sentences one must borrow its *nominative case* and *verb* from the other. Thus the second will become, *breve et efficax est iter, &c.*

<sup>l</sup> *Janus* was a heathen god, represented with *two faces*, one looking each way : his temple at Rome was *shut* in time of peace.

<sup>m</sup> *Numa Pompilius*, the second king of Rome.

272. Cūrēre, want or am without,  
And egeo, require  
Or need, do both, without a doubt,  
An ablative desire.

(a) But egeo sometimes, and indigeo often, takes the genitive.

### 273. VOCABULARY 48.

[Prepositions governing the ablative.]

A, ab, abs <sup>n</sup> ,	from ; by (before the <i>doer</i> of the action).
Absquē <sup>o</sup> ,	without.
Clam,	without the knowledge of.
Coram,	before ; in the presence of.
Dē,	concerning ; about ( <i>of</i> , when it means <i>about</i> ).
E, ex P,	out of ; from.
Præ,	before ; in comparison with.
Prō,	for.
Sinē,	without.
Tenus,	{ as far as (which follows its noun, and in the plural may govern the genitive).

To die,	{ mōri, mortuus (with terminations of the fourth, except in present, [where it has them in first sing. and third plur.] infinitive, imperative, and imperf. subjunctive).
---------	---

### Exercise 54.

274. Ought we not to succour the miserable ? Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible* ? Ought not Balbus to have kept his word ? Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death ? I have received many letters from you. The bird has flown away from my hands. He is gone away *without* his father's knowledge.

275. [Obs. After *oportuit* the present infinitive is to be construed by 'to have,' &c.]

Dulce est pro patriā mori. Coram populo loquētur. Argentum præ auro contemnītur. Cæcus de coloribus judicāre non potest. Etiam sine magistro vitia dis-

<sup>n</sup> *A* before consonants ; *ab* before vowels, and it *may* stand before *any* of the consonants in *hujus laris*. *Abs* only before the consonants in *quot*.

<sup>o</sup> *Absque* is uncommon.

<sup>P</sup> *E* before consonants ; *ex* before vowels or consonants.

cuntur. Usitatae res facile e memoriâ elabuntur. Vapores a sole ex aquis excitantur. Alexander omnia Oceano tenus vicit. Caius febri caret. Omnes<sup>q</sup> pauperum auxilio egemus. Fidem servari oportuit. Prudentiam vestram patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. In illo proelio equites nostri audaciâ et virtute excellerunt. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis?

### Lesson 55.

#### 276. VOCABULARY 49.

[Prepositions, acc. or abl.]

In, with *acc.* into, to, towards, against, for.

In, with *abl.* in, upon, among, in the case of.

[The prepositions *in* and *sub* govern the *acc.* in answer to *whither* (that is, after verbs of *motion*); and the *ablative* in answer to *where* (that is, after verbs of *rest*).]

Super, with *acc.* { above, over, beyond (generally after verbs of motion), besides.

Super, with *abl.* { upon<sup>r</sup>; *on* or *of* (a subject enquired or written about).

Sub Idem tempus, about the same time.

To heal, mederi, governing dative (by 191) (*medicine*).

To seem, videri, visus.

To desire, { cùpere, cùpiv, cùpit (with the added i. 187, x).

More, plus, G. pluris<sup>s</sup>.

#### English.

#### Latin.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 277. How much greater, | By how much greater; <i>quanto major</i> .     |
| So much greater,       | By so much greater; <i>tanto major</i> .       |
| Much greater,          | By much greater; <i>multo major</i> .          |
| Considerably greater,  | By some-deal greater; <i>aliquanto major</i> . |

278. (Eng.) The more he teaches, the more he learns.

(Lat.) *By-how-much* more he teaches, *by so much* more he learns.

(or) *By-what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. 'The' — 'the' before two comparatives

<sup>q</sup> When the verb is of the *first* or *second* person, and an adjective is expressed, put *we* or *you* before the adjective. Thus, *omnes*, we all, &c.

<sup>r</sup> This belongs to poetry.

<sup>s</sup> It has no other forms in the sing. In plural *plures*, *plura*, G. *plurimum*, &c.

must be translated by 'quanto'—'tanto,' or by 'quo'—'eo.'

280. Obs. The *tanto* or *eo* goes with that assertion which follows from the other.

If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with 'if,' and let the 'if' sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.

(a) Thus in the example (278), his *learning* more will follow, or be the *consequence*, of his *teaching* more.

'If' he teaches much, *he will learn more* than he otherwise would.

### *Exercise 55.*

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo s<sup>e</sup>pe salubrior est. Quanto tempus est felicius, tanto brevius esse videtur. Quo plura habent homines, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccare. Juvēni pārandum est; seni utendum. Nē jāres. Jurasnē?

### *Lesson 56.*

#### **282. VOCABULARY 50.**

The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective.]

<i>Facile,</i>	easily (from <i>facilis</i> , easy): <i>facilius</i> , more easily.
<i>Cito,</i>	quickly (from <i>citus</i> , quick): <i>citius</i> , more quickly.
<i>Bark,</i>	cortex, <i>corticis</i> , m.
To cover, surround,	<i>ob-dūcēre</i> , <i>dux</i> , duct.
Safe,	<i>tutus</i> .
Virtuous, upright,	<i>honestus</i> . Virtuously, <i>honestē</i> .
Courageously,	fortiter (comparative, <i>fortius</i> ).

283. (*Eng.*) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.

(*Lat.*) I ploughed it three times, *by which*<sup>t</sup> it might produce a *better* crop.

<sup>t</sup> Arāvi, &c., quo posset meliōres fruges edēre,

284. (a) When 'that' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.

(b) 'That' with comparatives and 'the,' By 'quo' may best translated be.

285. (Eng.) Some persons think.  
 (Lat.) There are some who think (sunt qui putent).  
 (Eng.) Some persons thought.  
 (Lat.) There were who thought (erant qui putarent).

### *Exercise 56.*

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against "enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, *that* he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, *that* he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, construe *quo* by 'that,' and put 'the' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbōrum cortīce obducuntur, *quo* sint a frīgōre et calōre tūtiōres. An licet Christiānis gloriāe servīre? Omniōbus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquēre. Miserēre nostri. Natūrā omnes propensi sumus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbāra consuetūdo immolandōrum hominū? Nonne mors quotidie ob očūlos ponenda est?

### *Lesson 57.*

	<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
287.	<i>I repent of my folly,</i> <i>I am vexed at my folly,</i> <i>I am ashamed of my folly,</i> <i>I pity the poor,</i> <i>I am weary of life,</i>	<i>It-repents me of my folly.</i> <i>It-vexes me of my folly.</i> <i>It-shames me of my folly.</i> <i>It-pities me of the poor.</i> <i>It-irks me of life.</i>

"Adversus.

- (a) Me mēse stultitiae pœnitet<sup>v.</sup>
- (b) Me mēa stultitiae piget.
- (c) Me mēa stultitiae pudet.
- (d) Mis̄eret me paup̄erum.
- (e) Tædet me vitæ.

288. When 'ut' the word for 'that' would be,  
 'That-not' may both be done by nē;  
 Unless a 'so' or 'such' preceded,  
 For then a 'non' will still be needed.

289. (a) Palpēbræ molles sunt ne  
*The eye-lids soft are, that*  
 premant ocūlum.  
*they may not press the eye.*
- (b) Tanta est multitūdo, ut non possint  
*So great is the multitude, that they cannot*  
 numerāri.  
*be numbered.*

#### 290. VOCABULARY 51.

Slothful,	ignāvus (in, not; <i>gnavus, active</i> ).
Sloth,	ignavia.
Some-time-or-other,	aliquando.
Physician,	medīcus.
Some,	aliquis (something, <i>aliquid</i> ).
Attentive	studiōsus.
To order,	jubēre, juss, juss (followed by <i>acc.</i> with <i>inf.</i> ).
To learn by heart,	e-discere.
Athenian,	{ Atheniensis. ( <i>Ensis</i> is a common termination of names derived from towns.)
Socrātes,	{ Socrāt-es, <i>G.</i> is (one of the greatest of heathen men. He taught the <i>immortality of the soul</i> , and was put to death by his countrymen the Athenians).
To value more highly,	pluris facere.
To cause to be made,	{ faciendum curāre (the partic. to agree with its noun).

#### Exercise 57.

291. It is more pleasant to make a friend, than to have (one). The slothful man will some-time-or-other repent of his sloth. Christians pity the poor.

▼ These verbs are regularly conjugated: *pœnitet*, *pœnitēbat*, *pœnituit*, *pœnituerat*, *pœnitēbit*, &c.

He will give the physician something, *that* he may be *the* more attentive. I order my son never to remember this injury. We give verses to boys to-be-learnt-by-heart. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. Have you not understood, that I do not need money? Anger has cost the state much blood. I *value you more-highly* every day.

292. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovent pullos, ne frigore laedantur. Eorum misereri oportet, qui propter fortunam, non propter malitiam in miseriis sunt. Tui me miseret: mei piget. Raro primi consilii Caium pœnitet. Sapientia semper eo contenta est, quod adest. Scipio dicēbat, malle<sup>w</sup> se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes occidere. Sic adhuc vixi, ut nemo unquam me ullius injuriæ accusavērit. Pontem in Istro fluminē faciendum curavi. *Inter ambulandum* multa mecum locūtus est.

### *Lesson 58.*

293. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tum* or *quum* followed by *tum*, are *both—and*.

294. Non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.

295. Tam—quam, { <sup>so—as : as—as.</sup>  
                        { <sup>as well—as.</sup>  
                        { <sup>both—and.</sup>

296. Etiam, *even, also* (*etiam atque etiam, again and again*); quoque, *also, too* (*follows the word it belongs to*).

### *Exercise 58.*

297. Amphibia et in aquâ et in terrâ vivunt. Et discet puer, et docebit. Etiam tu hinc abis? Rogo te, et etiam oro. Et Romæ vixi et Carthagine. Ut mihi succurras, etiam atque etiam te rogo (296). Lopus quum ovem tum canem momordērat. Ovem

\* That he had rather: infinitive of *mālo* (which see).

non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. Horti parantur tum ad utilitatem, tum ad jucunditatem. Multæ herbæ quum jucundissimum tum saluberrium cibum suppeditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catulos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

### *Lesson 59.*

298. *Aut, or.*

aut—aut; vel—vel, *either—or.*

299. *sive—sive* } *either—or.*

*seu—seu* } *whether—or.*

vel is sometimes ‘even;’ with superlatives,  
‘*very*,’ ‘*extremely*,’ ‘*possible*.’

300. *Sive*\* is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

### *Exercise 59.*

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigore rigent, aut uruntur calore. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morosus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese\* vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, poenas persolvērunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplinâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calore nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus est, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corporei prodest. Vel (299) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

\* *Sive* is *si—ve*, ‘or if.’ Thus ‘Caius *sive* Balbus,’ is ‘Caius, or if you like, Balbus’ (for that is another name of his).

\* See p. 120, 23.

*Lesson 60.*

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an opposition.)

302. *At, sed, autem, verum, vero, but.*  
*Tamen, attamen, } yet; but; but yet.*  
*Veruntamen,*      }  
*Atqui,*              *but or now (as used in reasoning).*

*Exercise 60.*

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus ; *at* placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistōcles ; *at* Pericles idem non fecit. Si certum est <sup>y</sup> facere, facias ; *verum* ne post conferas culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impedior. Aut hoc aut illud est : non *autem* hoc (est) ; ergo (304) illud (est). Absolutus est Caius ; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniā. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum : *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

---

*Lesson 61.*

304. *Nam, namque, enim, for.*  
*Igitur, ideo, therefore.*  
*Ergo, therefore, then.*  
*Itaque, accordingly; and so;*  
*Quare, therefore.*  
*wherefore.*

*Exercise 61.*

305. In eâ re prudentiâ adjūtus est : *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summâ æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnâ nihil nobilius : nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus tantum exercitum devicit.

---

<sup>y</sup> Si certum est (*if it is fixed*), if you are resolved.

Magno<sup>z</sup> Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodecim cum canibus venaticis exierunt. Aristides æqualis fere fuit Themistocli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est)? Nihil laboras: ideo nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: quare eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

---

### Lesson 62.

306. (☞) The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative*.

(a) But the ‘*perfect*,’ when it answers to our *perfect* with ‘*have*,’ is not considered a *past* tense.

---

307. ‘*Ut*’ with the *subjunct*. { (1) ‘in order that;’ ‘that;’ ‘so that.’  
 (2) the *infinitive* (expressing the *purpose*).  
 (3) ‘as’ with *infinitive*.  
 (4) ‘granting that;’ ‘although.’  
 (5) ‘that,’ and carry ‘not’ (after *to fear*).

(a) (*Ut* with the *indicative* is ‘as,’ ‘when,’ ‘since,’ ‘after,’ ‘how.’)

(b) When *ut* introduces a *purpose*, the *subjunctive* verb will be construed by ‘*may*,’ ‘*might*.’ When it signifies a *consequence* (which it regularly does after ‘*so*,’ ‘*such*’), the *subjunctive* verb is construed by the *indicative*: but the *imperfect* by the English *perfect*.

### Exercise 62.

Obs. *possim* (*is*, *it*, &c.) = ‘can’ or ‘may.’  
*possem* (*ea*, *et*, &c.) = ‘could’ or ‘might.’

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis *laudentur*. Stellarum *tanta* multitudo est, *ut* numerari *non possint*. In summis Alpibus<sup>a</sup> tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

---

<sup>z</sup> Stare magno, to cost a man dear. Magno agrees with *præcūs* (price) understood.

<sup>a</sup> On the top of the Alps. *Summus*, *imus*, *medius*, *primus*, *extremus*, *reliquus*, &c., agreeing with nouns, are generally construed by substanti-

quam liquecat. Hominis corpus celsum et erectum est, ut cœlum intueri possit.

Ursi per hiemem tam gravi somno premuntur, *ut* nē vulneribus quidem excitentur. In Indiâ serpentes ad tantam magnitudinem adolescunt, *ut* integrōs hau-riant cervos, taurosque.

(2) Vénit (*he is come*) *ut* claudat (*to shut*), &c.

Enītar *ut vincam*. Magnopère te hortor, *ut* hos de philosophia libros studiōse legas. Capram monet, *ut* in pratum descendat. Ante senectutem curavi, *ut* bene vivērem. Fornīca sitiens ad fontem descendit, *ut* bibēret.

(3) No one is *so good*, *ut* nunquam peccet (*as never to sin*).

Quis *tam* demens est, *ut* suâ voluntate moereat! Nulla anus *tam* delīra est, *ut* hæc credat.

(4) *Ut desint* vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. *Ut* circumspiciamus omnia, quæ populo grata atque jucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam concordiam reperiemus.

 For *ut* after *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

### Lesson 63.

309. *Nē* with subjunctive, 

(1)	{ 'lest,'
(2)	'that,' and carry 'not.'
(3)	'not' with the infinitive.
(4)	'not' with imperat. or subjunct. used imperatively.

### Exercise 63.

(1) I did it, *nē that*, vidēret *he might not see*, &c.

310. (1) Palpēbræ molles sunt, *ne premant oculum*. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovent pullos, *ne frigore*

*tices*, followed by a genitive case. Imus mons, *the bottom or foot of the mountain*. Reliqua Ægyptus, *the rest of Egypt*. Sapientia prima, *the beginning of wisdom*. In *extremo tertio libro*, *at the end of the third book*.

*lœdantur.* Nix seḡetes op̄erit, *ne* frigōre *absumantur*. Cave *ne* incognita pro cognitis *habeas*. Cave *ne* quid temere *dicas* aut *facias* contra potentes. Oculi palp̄bris sunt muniti, *nē* quid incidat. Alexander edixit, *nē* quis<sup>b</sup> ipsum, præter Apellem, pinḡeret.

(2) *I advised him ne not, iret to go.*

Monuit capram, *ne* in pratum descend̄eret. Trebonio mandaverat, *ne* per vim Massiliam<sup>c</sup> expugnari pateretur. Monui puerum, *ne* fabis vesceretur.

(3) *Not with imperatives is nē,*  
A 'non' is hateful then to see.

Crabrōnes *nē irrita*. *Nē* reprehende errores aliorum, sed emendes potius tuos. Diu *nē* morare in conclavibus modo dealbatis<sup>d</sup>. *Ne tentes*, quod effici non possit.

☞ For *ne* with *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

### Lesson 64.

311. 'Quin,' with subj. (1) 'but' (as used after *negatives*).  
(2) the relative with *not*.  
(3) 'as not' with *infinitives*.  
(4) 'that' after *doubt*, *deny*, in *negative sentences*.  
(5) 'from' or 'without' with the *participial substantive*, after *escape*, *prevent*, &c.

### Exercise 64.

- (1) a. 'But' very nearly coincides with *quin*; though we now *more* commonly use some of the other forms here given.  
(2) There is nobody, *quin putet* { *but thinks*.  
  *who does not think*.  
(3) b. No one is *so mad*, *quin (as not) putet (to think)*, &c.  
(4) { *I don't deny* } *quin that* (or, *but that*) *turpe sit, it is disgraceful*.  
(5) *She never saw him*, *quin, without, ridēret, laughing*.  
  *She could not be restrained, quin, from, ridēret, laughing*.

<sup>b</sup> When *ne* is construed *that*, *quis*, *quid* (*anybody*, *anything*) must be construed *nobody*, *nothing*.

<sup>c</sup> Marseilles.

<sup>d</sup> That have been lately white-washed. .

312. Nullum animalium genus adeo ferox est, *quin*<sup>e</sup> vehementer *amet* prolem suam. Nulla fere pars est pecōrum, *quin*<sup>f</sup> ad commōda nostra facta sit. Vere sapiens nunquam dubitabit, *quin*<sup>g</sup> immortalis *sit* animus. Ex odoratu et adspectu pomorum dubitare non possūmus, *quin* hominibus ea donata sint. Nemo est tam bonus ac provīdus, *quin* interdum *peccet*. Caius prohiberi non potuit, *quin* (5) *erumpōret*. Non dubito, *quin* *ascenderis* murum. Nemo erit tam stultus, *quin* (3) hæc *fateatur*. Non possum pro dignitate vivere, *quin* (5) alterūtram partem *offendōrem*. Negari non potest, *quin* turpius *sit* fallēre quam falli. Nihil in rerum naturā invenītur, *quin* sapientissime institutum *sit*. Qui temere omnibus credit, effugēre non potest<sup>h</sup>, *quin* sæpius fallatur. Infesta concio vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* protinus saxa in Polemōnem *jacōret*. Timoleontem mater, post fratris necem, nunquam adspexit, *quin* eum fratri-cidam impiumque *compellaret*.

### Lesson 65.

313. After verbs of *hindering*, ‘*quomīnus*’ with the subjunct. is more common than *ne*. It may generally be translated by ‘*from*,’ the verb being turned into the *participial substantive*: but after ‘*refuse*,’ by the *infinitive*.

### Exercise 65.

- (1) *Nothing deterred him, quomīnus faceret (from doing) &c.*  
 (2) *I will not refuse, quomīnus faciam (to do) &c.*

314. Nihil impēdit, *quomīnus id facere possīmus*. Non deterret sapientem mors, *quomīnus*<sup>i</sup> in omne tempus

<sup>e</sup> As not to love, &c.

<sup>g</sup> That the mind is.

<sup>i</sup> Does not deter, &c. from forwarding the interests of the commonwealth, and of his own (friends). Consulere alicui = to consult a man's welfare, to forward his interests.

<sup>f</sup> That is not made.

<sup>h</sup> Cannot avoid being often deceived.

reipublicæ, \*suisque *consulat*. Rebus terrēnis multa externa, quominus perficiantur, possunt obstatere. Quid obstat, quominus Caius sit *beatus*? Epaminondas non recusavit, quominus legis poenam *subiret*. Non me terrēbis, quominus illud *faciam*. Prohibēre Romanos, quominus frumentum *sumarent*, non poterant. Non me *impedes*, quominus ei pecuniam illam *numerem*.

(Note. Literally ‘*quo minus*’ = *by which the less*, or, so that the less. Caio nihil obstat, *quo minus sit beatus*, is literally “Nothing stands in the way of Caius, by which he should be the less happy.”)

---

### Lesson 66.

315. After words of ‘fearing,’ ‘*ne*’ and ‘*ut*’ appear to change meanings: *ne* = *that* (or *lest*); *ut* = *that—not*. (Also the *subjunct. present* must generally be construed by the *future*.)

Vereor *ne*, I fear he *will*; or *lest he should*, &c.  
 Vereor *ut*, } I fear he *will not*; or *lest he should not*.  
 Vereor *ne-non*, }

### Exercise 66.

316. Vereor, *ne* labores tuos *augeam*. Pavor ceperat milites, *ne* mortifērum *essem* vulnus Scipionis. Homo scelestus semper verētur, *ne* peccata sua *patefiant*. Imprōbi semper sunt in *metu*, *ne* poenā *afficiantur* aliquando. Vereor, *ne* brevi tempore fames in urbe *sit*. Verebamini, *ne* non id facerem. Vereor, *ne* consolatio nulla vera possit reperiri. Timeo, *ne* non impētrem. Metuebant, *ne* dolorem ferre *non* possent.

Timeo, *ut* labores tantos *sustineas*. Avarus semper veretur, *ut* satis habeat. Vereor, *ut* pax firma *sit*. Ignavus semper metuit, *ut* *sustineat* labores.

---

\* *Sui* = a man’s dependants, a man’s friends.

a. In English we often leave out the conjunction 'that' after a verb of fearing.

*Metuo, ne artificium tuum tibi parum prospicit.*

---

### Lesson 67.

#### ON INTERROGATIVES.

317. All interrogatives take the indicative, *when the question* is put *directly*: they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation.

a. *Num*, *an*, and *nō* (which is always appended to another word), are not construed in direct sentences.

b. *Num* (in direct questions) expects the answer 'no.' *An* expects the answer 'no,' and expresses impatience, indignation, &c.<sup>1</sup> *Nonnō* expects the answer 'yes.'

c. The force of '*an*' may generally be given by adding 'why' or 'then' to the question.

*An credis?* { *Why, do you believe . . . ?*  
*An credis?* { *Do you believe then . . . ?*

### Exercise 67.

318. *Quis non paupertatem extimescit? Unde lucem suam habet luna? Quid interest<sup>m</sup> inter hominem et bestiam? Quid feret crastinus dies? Quare vitia sua nemo confitetur? Cur te excrucias? Quid rides?*

*Ubi aut qualis est tua mens? Potesne dicere?—Num sola maris aqua est salsa? Vtne miser esse? Estne animus immortalis? Nonne poētae post mortem nobilitari volunt? Num scimus, quo se conférant aves peregrinantes? An tu esse me tristem putas? An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?*

OBS. *Nē* is often appended to the other particles; *numnō*, *annō*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> A question with *nō* may be such as to make us confidently expect 'yes' or 'no' for the answer. But the answer is then suggested by the nature of the question, not by the form of it.

<sup>m</sup> *What difference is there?* intersum.

## Lesson 68.

319. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when they ask *indirectly* or *doubtfully*; especially when another verb goes before the question.

(a) Such verbs are *ask*, *doubt*, *try*, *not know*; it is *uncertain*, &c.

(b) *Num*, *an*, *nō*, in a dependent sentence, are ‘*whether*’; and ‘*num*’ does not imply that the answer ‘*no*’ is expected.

(c) *An* is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

## Exercise 68.

320. *Quis* enumeret<sup>n</sup> artium multitudinem? Nescio, *unde* sol ignem *habeat*. Dic mihi, *quem* sol nobis *adferat* usum. Nescimus, *quid* serus vesper *advecturus* sit<sup>o</sup>. *Quid* futurum *sit*, nescimus. *Quid* vere nobis *prosit*<sup>p</sup>, non semper intelligimus. Olim quæstio erat, *num* terra rotunda *esset*. *Num* ægrotum interrogabis, *an* sanari *velit*? Cogita tecum, *an* gratiam *retuleris*, quibus gratiam debes. Quæritur<sup>q</sup> unquamne fuerint monocerotes. Utrum<sup>r</sup> velis, elige. Non me terrebis, quom̄nus, *utrum* velim, eligam. Quid dicam nescio.

## Lesson 69.

321. In *double questions* either

- |   |
|---|
| $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ The first is introduced by } \textit{num}, \textit{utrum}, \text{or the appended} \\ \quad \textit{nō}, \text{and the second by } \textit{an} \text{ (or): or,} \\ (2) \text{ The first question has no interrogative adverb; the} \\ \quad \text{second, } \textit{an} \text{ or the appended } \textit{nō}. \end{array} \right.$ |
|---|

<sup>n</sup> Who can reckon up?

<sup>o</sup> Will bring.

<sup>p</sup> Quid vere proxit (prosum) nobis; what is really beneficial to us?

<sup>q</sup> It is sought = it is a question, or a disputed point: monocerotes, unicorns.

<sup>r</sup> Neut. of *uter*.

## Exercise 69.

322. (1) [Direct.] *Utrum<sup>r</sup>* major est sol, *an* minor,  
quam terra? Casun<sup>ē</sup> mundus est effectus, *an* vi divinā? Num sol mobilis est, *an* immobilis? Sumusne mortales,  
*an* immortales? [Indirect or dependent.] Quæritur,  
unusne sit mundus *an* plures? Nihil rēfert<sup>s</sup>, *utrum* sit  
aurēum poculum, *an* vitreum.

(2) [Direct.] Uter est infelior, cæcus *an* surdus?  
*Utrum* est pretiosius, aurum *an* argentum? [Indirect.] Stellarum numerus part<sup>t</sup> *an* impar sit, incertum est.  
Hominibus prodesse<sup>u</sup> natura jubet: servi liberine  
sint; quid refert<sup>v</sup>? Dic mihi, æstate<sup>w</sup> grandinet, *an*  
hieme. Multum interest<sup>x</sup>, valentes imbecilline simus.

a. *Necne* in the second question is ‘or not.’

---

## Lesson 70.

323. (*Some conjunctions that always take the subjunctive.*)

*Utinam*, *would that*.

*O si*, (*O! if*) *O! that, would that*.

*licet, although*.

*quasi, tanquam, as if*.

*dum, modo, dummodo, provided; if only*.

*quamvis, however-much, however*.

---

<sup>r</sup> *Is the sun . . . ?*

<sup>s</sup> *It makes no difference.*

<sup>t</sup> *Eten: impar, odd.*

<sup>u</sup> *Prosum.*

<sup>v</sup> *What matters it, or, what does it signify whether, &c.?*

<sup>w</sup> *In the summer.*

<sup>x</sup> *It makes a great difference.*

*Exercise 70.*

*Note.*—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be construed by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari *possit*! *Utinam* ense nullus magistratus *eget*! *O si* quisque virtutem *colat*! *O si* omnes *cogitent*, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, *licet sit* aliqua præsentis et præteriti. Imprōbus ita vivit, *quasi nesciat*, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. Nemo, *quamvis sit* locuples, aliorum ope carēre potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, *dummōdo* laborare *velint*, alat. Ita fac omnia, *tanquam spectet* aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, *ac si taceat*. Utinam hoc verum sit. Sic agis, *quasi me ames*.

a. When *provided only* is to be followed by *not*, *ne* is used.

Sit summa in jure dicendo severitas, *dummōdo* ea *ne* varietur gratiā.

## ON PARTICIPLES.

*Lesson 71.*

325. Participles *assume* an assertion, which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so.

Thus, ‘I went to Henry, *being ill*,’ might be expressed (according to the meaning) by ‘I went to Henry, *who was ill*;’ ‘I went to Henry, *because he was ill*;’ ‘I went to Henry, *though he was ill*,’ &c.

326. Translate the participles in the following examples by *relative* sentences.

EXAMPLE, (1) *The boy* ridens, { *who laughs; or is laughing.*  
   *who was laughing.*

(2) *The boy* risurus, { *who is going to laugh,*  
   (or) *who will laugh.*

(3) *The boy* amatus, *who is (or was) loved.*

(4) *The boy* amandus, *who ought to be loved.*

327. If no substantive is expressed, supply a *man*, *men*; or *he*, *she*, *those*, &c.

(5) ridentis, of *him* who laughs; or, *of a man who laughs.*

(6) ridentium, of *those* who laugh; or, *of men who laugh.*

328. With a neuter plural participle, '*things*' is to be supplied; but for '*things which or that*', it is generally better to use '*what*' only.

(7) præteritura, { *things that will pass away.*  
   *what will pass away.*

### Exercise 71.

329. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. Hæ sunt divitiae certæ, semper *permansuræ*. Sapiens bona semper *placitura laudat*. Omnes aliud <sup>1</sup> *agentes*, aliud *simulantes* <sup>2</sup> iinprōbi sunt. PISISTRĀTUS HOMĒRI libros, *confūsos* antea, dispossuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrūlus tacēre nequit <sup>a</sup> sibi *commissa* (7). Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda*, aut vituperat *lau-danda*.

### Lesson 72.

330. Construe the participles in the following Exercise by verbs with '*when*', '*as*'.

<sup>1</sup> The first *aliud* must be construed '*one thing*'; the second '*another*'.

<sup>2</sup> Put in a '*but*' before *simulantes*.

<sup>a</sup> Nequeo

- (1) *ridens*, { *when he is (or was) laughing.*  
                   { *as he is (or was) laughing.*

331. In a sentence with *when* we often omit the auxiliary verb: hence

- (2) *ridens* may be construed ‘*when laughing.*’

332. If the participle stands alone, ‘*he,*’ ‘*they,*’ ‘*a man,*’ ‘*one,*’ ‘*men,*’ &c. must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

- (3) *ridenti*, { *when he is laughing.*  
                   { *when one is laughing.*

- (4) *ridentibus*, when *men* (or *they*) are laughing.

### Exercise 72.

333. *Leo esuriens rugit. XERXES a Graecis victus in Persiam refūgit. Esurienti* (3) *gratior est cibus. Sudanti* (3) *frigida potio perniciosissima est. Dionysius tyrannus, Syracūsis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat. Aranti* QUINCTIO CINCINNATO *nuntiatum est, eum Dictatōrem esse factum. Hæc poma sedens decerpsi. Leōnes satiati innoxii sunt. Ne mente quidem recte uti possūmus, multo cibo et pōtione impletī. Alit lectio ingenium, et studio fatigatum reficit. Elephantes nemini nocent, nisi lacesſiti.*

### Lesson 73.

334. Construe the following participles by verbs with ‘if.’

- (1) *ridens*, { *if he \* laughs.*  
                   { *if a man (or one) laughs.*

- (2) *amatus*, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.*  
                   { *if I had been loved.*

\* The nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they, &c.* according to the person of the verb.

*Exercise 73.*

335. Quis est qui, totum diem *jacūlans*, non aliquando collineet<sup>b</sup>? Equum *empturus*, cave nē deciparis. Hostes, hanc *adepti* victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidēt. *Victi* hostes in Persiam refūgient. *Admonitus* (2) venissem. *Liberatus*, rus ex urbe evolabo. Romā *expulsus* Carthagine pueros docēbo.

*Lesson 74.*

336. Construe the following participles by verbs with *because*, *for*, *since*; or by the *participial substantive* with *from* or *through*.

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| dubitans | { (1) because I doubt.<br>(2) for I doubt.<br>(3) since I doubt.<br>(4) from doubting.<br>(5) through doubting. |
|----------|---|

*Exercise 74.*

337. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse<sup>a</sup> *diffidens*. Hostes hanc *adepti* (4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquā anātes degere non possunt, magnam victūs partem in aquā quārentes. Respondent se perfidiam *veritos* revertisse. Stellæ nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ*. Cantus olorīnus recte fabulōsus habētur, nunquam *audītus*.

*Lesson 75. [See note, p. 104.]*

338. Construe the following participles by verbs with *though*, *although*.

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| (1) ridens, | though he laughs.  |
| amatus,     | { (2) though he is loved.<br>(3) though he was loved.<br>(4) even though he should be loved. |

<sup>b</sup> *Pres. subj.* construe by *pres. indic.*

\* Construe mihi *myself*, and take no further notice of *ipse*.

339. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*. Hence we may sometimes construe

- (5) *ridens, though laughing.*
- (6) *amatus, though loved.*

### *Exercise 75.*

340. Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie *delinquentes*. Multa transimus ante oculos *posita*. Oculus, se non *videns*, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum *cupientes* tenere nequeamus. Scripta tua jam diu *expectans*<sup>d</sup>, flagitare non audeo. Quis hoc non intelligit, Verrem *absolutum* (4) tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse! Omnia magnâ voce *dicens*, simulabat tantum se furere. Ad cœnam *vocatus*, nondum vénit.

### *Lesson 76. [Note p. 104.]*

341. Construe the following past participles by *after*, with a verb or participial substantive.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>(Act.) passus,</i>  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) \text{ after he has suffered.} \\ (2) \text{ after he had suffered.} \\ (3) \text{ after suffering.} \end{array} \right.$                      |
| <i>(Pass.) amatus,</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (4) \text{ after he was (or has been) loved.} \\ (5) \text{ after he had been loved.} \\ (6) \text{ after having been loved.} \end{array} \right.$ |

### *Exercise 76.*

342. JOSEPHUS in Ægypto, multa mala *perpessus* (3), ad summos honores evectus est. Israëlitæ, Ægypto *egressi*, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt commorati. Pleraque scribuntur orationes *habitæ*<sup>e</sup> jam, non ut habeantur. DIONYSIUS, a Syracusis *expulsus*<sup>f</sup>, Corin-thi pueros docebat. ALEXANDER ABDOLONIUM diu

<sup>d</sup> Use the perf. definite, 'have been expecting.'

<sup>e</sup> Habere orationem, to deliver a speech.

<sup>f</sup> Construe first by (4); then by (6).

*contemplatus* interrogavit, quâ patientiâ inopiam tulisset. *Lautis* cibum capiunt Germani.

### Lesson 77.

343. Construe the following participles by verbs, and place '*and*' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be construed by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) *Ridens he laughs, exclamat and exclaims.*

(2) *Ridens he laughed, exclamavit and exclaimed.*

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum leporem, he has seized the hare, lacerat, and is mangling it.*

### Exercise 77.

344. *Jussis divinis obediens virtuti studet. Cræsus, a Cyro victus, regno spoliatus est. Troja, equi lignei ope capta, incendio delēta est. Persæ mortuos cerâ circumlitos<sup>h</sup> condunt. Grues, quum loca calidiora petentes maria transmittunt, trianguli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsum<sup>i</sup> non accidisset, si quiescens legibus paruissem. Cum legionibus profectus<sup>k</sup> celeriter adero. TITUS MANLIUS Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum cæsum, torque spoliavit. Comprehensum hominem Romanum ducēbant (3). Mulier ALCIBIADEM suâ veste contectum cremavit.*

### Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be construed *without*: the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

non *without*, *ridens laughing.*

non *without*, { *amatus being loved.*  
                  *amatus loving him.*

<sup>s</sup> Partic. from *lavare*, to wash.

<sup>i</sup> Construe *ipse* by *even*.

<sup>h</sup> From *circumlinere*.

<sup>k</sup> Proficiisci.

## Exercise 78.

346. *Non petens regnum accepit. Romani Græcis non rogati ultro offérunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum non spoliare. Neminem in familiaritatē recipe non cognitum<sup>1</sup>. Multi homines vituperant libros non intellectos<sup>1</sup>. Beneficis est, qui non privatis commōdis permōtus, alios adjūvat.*

347. Obs. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed in the same way: the substantive will be the nom. to the verb; or the acc. after it<sup>m</sup>.

Thus, Tarquinio regnante,	<i>when Tarquinius was king.</i>
te sedente,	<i>as you were sitting.</i>
captā Tyro,	<i>after Tyre was taken.</i>
migraturis apibus,	<i>when the bees are going to swarm.</i>
fēle comprehensa,	<i>if the cat is caught.</i>
adēmto pomo,	<i>because his apple was taken away.</i>
radice succisa,	<i>though the root was cut.</i>
fasce sublato, redit,	<i>he takes up the bundle AND returns.</i>
te non salutato,	<i>without saluting you.</i>

348. Participles may often be construed by *substantives* of a kindred meaning: Thus,

<i>For</i>	<i>We may say,</i>
Ciconiae redeuntes, The returning storks,	} The return of the storks.
Januario addito, By January added,	} By the addition of January.
Leges violatae, The violated laws,	} The violation of the laws.
Vere appropinquante, Spring approaching,	} On the approach of spring.

<sup>1</sup> Use *act. partic.*

<sup>m</sup> It may sometimes be the accusative after the verb; because bundle being taken by him' = 'the bundle was taken up by h which may be turned into 'he took up the bundle.'

## APPENDIX.

---

- \* The articles that have an asterisk before them, are not to be learnt till the other articles are known perfectly.
- 

### TERMINATIONS of SUBSTANTIVES and ADJECTIVES.

N.V.	Sing.				Plur.			
	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.V.	G.	D. Abl.	Acc.
1. <i>ā</i>	<i>ie</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>am</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>ārum</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>ās</i>
2. { <i>ūs, ēr</i> ( <i>um neut.</i> ) }	<i>ī</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ōrum</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>ōs</i>
3. { <i>various</i> ( <i>generally not</i> <i>containing the</i> <i>unaltered root</i> ) }	<i>īs</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>em</i> } <i>(im)</i>	<i>ē</i> } <i>(ī)</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ūm</i> } <i>ium</i>	<i>ībūs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
4. { <i>ūs</i> ( <i>neut. u</i> ) }	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>ū</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ūum</i>	<i>ībūs</i> }	<i>ūs</i>
5. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēi</i>	<i>ēi</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>ē</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ērum</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>	<i>ēs</i>

~~Obs.~~ In Neuters, Acc. is like Nom., and both in the plur. end in *ā*.

- \* 2. The Vocative is always like the nominative, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ē*. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius, genius*, contract *ie* into *i*.
- 3. Neuters in *e, al, ar*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur. *ium*.
- \* 4. (1) Nouns in *es, is, or*, not increasing in the gen., make Gen. pl. *ium*.

*But vates, proles, juvēnis, senex, canis,*  
*Take um; with pater, frater, mater, panis.*

- (2) Monosyllables take Gen. pl. *ium*. But the following, with a few more, take *um*:

Dux, grex,  
Vox, lex,  
Pes, prex,  
Fur, rex,  
Mos, fraus,  
Flos, laus.

(3) Nouns in *s*, *x*, after a consonant, take Gen. pl. *ium*.

- 5. The fourth declension is a contracted form of the third declension : G. *ūs*, *ūa*. Abl. *ū*, *ū*, &c.

(1) The following nouns of the fourth have Abl. *ūbus*:

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus *add, and artus* ;  
Tribus, lacus, specus *too, with veru, pecū, partus*.

(2) Neuters in *u* have gen. *us*, dat. *u*, pl. *ua*, *uum*, &c.

- 6. In the fifth declension *e* of G. and D. is *long*, if it follows a vowel ; *short*, if it follows a consonant. (*faciei*, *fidēi*.)

## 7. EXAMPLES.

Sing.	I. (table)	II. (boy)	III. (father)	IV. (chariot)	V. (day)
Nom. <i>the</i>	mensa	puer	pater	currūs	dies
Gen. of <i>the</i>	mensar	puteri	patris	currūs	diēs
Dat. <i>to or for the</i>	mensar	puero	patri	currui	dici
Acc. <i>the</i>	mensam	puerum	patrem	currum	dienn
Voc. <i>O</i>	mensa	puer	pater	currus	dies
Abl. <i>by, with the &amp;c.</i>	mensā	puero	patre	currū	diē

Plur.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. } <i>the</i>	mensar	pueri	patres	currass	dies
Voc. } <i>O the</i>	mensar	puerorum	patrum	curruum	dierum
Gen. of <i>the</i>	mensarum	puerorum	patrum	curruum	dierum
Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>	mensis	pueris	patribus	curribus	diebus
Abl. } <i>by, with the</i>	mensas	pueros	patres	currus	dies.

Sing.	I. (hour)	II. (food)	III. (cloud)	IV. (fruit)	V. (thing)
Nom. <i>the</i>	hora	cibus	nubes	fructūs	res
Gen. of <i>the</i>	horar	cibi	nubis	fructūs	rēs
Dat. <i>to or for the</i>	horar	cibo	nubi	fructui	rei
Acc. <i>the</i>	horam	cibum	nubem	fructum	rem
Voc. <i>O</i>	hora	cibe	nubes	fructus	res
Abl. <i>by, with the &amp;c.</i>	horā	cibo	nub-	fructu	re

Plur.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. } <i>the</i>	horar	cibi	nubes	fructūs	res
Voc. } <i>O the</i>	horarum	ciborum	nubium	fructuum	rērum
Gen. of <i>the</i>	horarum	ciborum	nubium	fructuum	rērum
Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>	horis	cibis	nubibus	fructibus	rebus
Abl. } <i>by, with the</i>	horas	cibos	nubes	fructūs	res.

## NEUTER NOUNS.

Sing.	II. (egg)	III. (song)	IV. (horn)
Nom. { the			
Acc. { the	ovum	carmen	cornu
Voc. { O the			
Gen. { of the	ovi	carminis	cornus
Dat. { to, for the	ovo	carmini	cornu
Abl. { by, with the &c.	ovo	carmine	cornu
<i>Plur.</i>			
Nom. { the			
Acc. { the	ova	carmina	cornua
Voc. { O the			
Gen. { of the	ovorum	carminum	cornuum
Dat. { to, for the	ovum	carminis	cornibus
Abl. { by, with the			

## 8. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

I.	2. Bonus,	1. bonă,	2. (neut.) bonum,	II.	2. tenēr,	1. tenēra,	2. (neut.) tenērum,
	Boni,	bonæ,	boni,		tenēri,	tenēræ,	tenēri,
I.	&c.	&c.	&c.		&c.	&c.	&c.
	Or,				Or,		
I.	Unus,	ună,	unum,	II.	æger,	ægră,	ægrum,
	Unius*,				ægri,	ægræ,	ægrî,
I.	Uni,				&c.		
	Unum,	unam,	unum,				
I.	&c.	&c.	&c.				

9. These adjectives are of the second declension in the *mas.* and *neut.*; of the first in the *fem.*

10. The following are declined like *unus*.

With *ius, i*, do nullus, ullus,  
Totus, solus, uter,  
Alter but with shortened *i*,  
Alius, unus, neuter.

\* Solius appears to have *i*, though commonly considered as long.

11. *Alius*, *G.* *alius* (= *ali-ius*). Neut. *aliud*.  
*Alter*, *G.* *alterius*. — Uter, *G.* *utrius*.

### ADJECTIVES OF ONE AND TWO TERMINATIONS

(which are all of the third declension).

12. [Adjectives in *is*.]—Adjectives in *is* have neut. *s*; Abl. *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; G. *ium*.

13. [Comparatives in *or*.]—Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us*; Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *a*; G. *um*.

14. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the neut. sing., and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.* (except in Nom. sing.).

15. (a) They have Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*, G. *ium*.

For participles abl. *e* }  
 For adjectives abl. *i* } is the more common.

16. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of one or two terminations, are,—

Two Termin.			Comparatives.			One Termin.		
S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.	M.F. (N.)	M.F.	N.
M.F. N.V.	N. M.F. N.	M.F. N.	N. M.F. N.	M.F. N.	M.F. (N.)	es	ia	
<i>is</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es ia</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ores ora</i>			
<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>	<i>oris</i>	<i>orum e</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>	
<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>	<i>ori</i>	<i>oribus</i>	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>	
<i>em</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es ia</i>	<i>oren us</i>	<i>ores ora</i>	<i>em</i> as nom.	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	
<i>i</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ore (ori)</i>	<i>oribus</i>	<i>(e) or i</i>			<i>ibus</i>	

17. An adjective must agree with its substantive in case, gender, and number.

### 18. EXAMPLES.

#### Singular.

M.	F.	N.
( <i>A good boy.</i> )	( <i>A good mother.</i> )	( <i>A good work.</i> )
N. bonus puer	bona mater	bonum opus
G. boni pueri	bonæ matris	boni opéris
D. bono puerō	bonæ matri	bono operi
A. bonum puerum	bonam matrem	bonum opus
V. bone puer	bona mater	bonum opus
Ab. bono puero .	bonā matre	bono opere

*Plural.*

M. (Good boys.)	F. (Good mothers.)	N. (Good works.)
N. boni pueri	bonae matres	bona opera
G. bonorum puerorum	bonarum matrum	bonorum operum
D. bonis pueris	bonis matribus	bonis operibus
A. bonos pueros	bonas matres	bona opera
V. boni pueri	bonae matres	bona opera
Ab. bonis pueris.	bonis matribus.	bonis operibus.

*Singular.*

(A green field.)	(A green herb.)	(Green grass.)
N. campus viridis	herba viridis	gramen viride
G. campi viridis	herbæ viridis	graminis viridis
D. campo viridi	herbæ viridi	gramini viridi
A. campum viridem	herbam viridem	gramen viride
Ab. campo viridi.	herbā viridi.	gramine viridi.

*Plural.*

N. campi virides	herbæ virides	gramina viridia
G. camporum viridium	herbarum viridium	graminum viridium
D. campis viridibus	herbis viridibus	graminibus viridibus
A. campos virides	herbas virides	gramina viridia
Ab. campis viridibus.	herbis viridibus.	graminibus viridibus.

*Singular.*

(A bold man.)	(A bold woman.)	(A bold animal.)
N. audax vir	audax femina	audax animal
G. audacis viri	audacis feminæ	audacis animalis
D. audaci viro	audaci feminæ	audaci animali
A. audacem virum	audacem feminam	audax animal
Ab. audaci viro.	audaci feminâ.	audaci animali.

*Plural.*

N. audaces viri	audaces feminæ	audacia animalia
G. audacium virorum	audacium feminarum	audacium animalium
D. audacibus viris	audacibus feminis	audacibus animalibus
A. audaces viros	audaces feminas	audacia animalia
Ab. audacibus viris.	audacibus feminis.	audacibus animalibus.

N. duo (two)      duee      duo	N. tres (three)      tria
G. duorum      duarum      duorum	G. trium
D. duobus      duabus      duobus	D. tribus
Acc. duos (duo)      duas      duo.	Acc. tres

## 19.

## THE VERB.

Terminations of the third persons of the Active Verb, &amp;c.\*

		1.	2.	3.	4.	Verb, to defend.
(1)	Present,	at,	et,	it,	it,	{ defends ; is defending ; does defend.
	Imperfect,	(R) ābat, ēbat, ēbat, iēbat,				was defending.
	Future,	(R) ābit, ēbit, ct, iet,				{ often defended ; did defend.)
	Perfect,	(r) it,				shall or will defend.
(2)	Pluperfect,	(r) ērat,				{ defended ; did defend ; has defended.
	Future perf.	(r) ērit,				had defended.
	Imperat. (pers. 2. R)	ā, ē, ē, ī,				{ shall or will have defended.
	Pres. subj.	(R) et, eat, at, int,				{ defend ; do you defend.
{	Imperf. subj.	(R) āret, ēret, ēret, īret,				{ may (or should) defend.
	Perf. subj.	(r) ērit,				{ might, should, would defend.
{	Pluperf. subj.	(r) isset,				{ may (or should) have defended.
	Infin. Pres.	(R) āre, ēre, ēre, īre,				{ might, should, would have defended.
{	Imperf.					to defend.
	Infin. Perf.					to have defended.
{	Pluperf.	(r) isse,				{ to be going (or about) to defend.
	Infin. Future,	part. in r̄ws with esse,				of defending.
{	Gerunds,	(R) andi, endi, endi, iendi,				to defend.
	Supine,	(ρ) um,				defending.
{	Part. Pres.	(R) ans, ens, ens, iens,				{ going (or about) to defend.
	Part. Fut.	(ρ) īrus,				{ (Passive Participles.)
(Passive Participles.)						
{	Past partic.	(ρ) us,				{ defended ; being
	Part. in dus,	(R) andus, endus, endus, iendus,				{ defended.
to be defended.						

\* R, r, ρ, stand respectively for 'root of present,' 'root of perfect,' 'root of supine.' In repeating the table, the pupil should always say which root the termination is to be added to. Thus : 'Pluperfect ; root of perfect ; it.'

- \* Obs. 1. *Shall*, in the first person, simply *foretells*; in the other persons, it *commands*.  
*Will*, in the first person, declares the *speaker's intention* in a positive manner; in the other persons, it simply *foretells*.
- \* Obs. 2. The *Imperfect* is construed by the *perf.* when it expresses *habits* or *repeated actions*.
- \* Obs. 3. The *pres.* 'does defend,' and the *perf.* 'did defend,' are used after *negative words*, and in *questions* and *strong affirmations*.
- \* Obs. 4. Remember that '*am come*' is *perf. act.*: '*is building*' *pres. pass.*: '*is built*' *perf. pass.*
- \* Obs. 5. The *pres. subj.* is often to be construed by *should*, *would* and, in *questions*, by *can*, *shall*, &c.
- \* Obs. 6. The *imperf. subj.* is sometimes to be construed by *should have*, *would have*; and, in *questions*, by *could*, &c.
- \* Obs. 7. In sentences with *if*, *when*, *until*, &c. a *future* is often to be construed by a *present*, and a *future perfect* by a *perfect*. This is when the verb of the principal sentence is *future*.

## 20. Terminations of the persons.

(Sing.)			(Plur.)		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Active, o, i, m,	s,	t,	mus,	tis,	nt.
Passive, r,	{ ris, re,	tur,	mur,	m̄ni,	ntur.

(1) This does not apply to the *Imperative*.

(2) *Perf. indio. Act.* has 2 sing. and plur. *isti*, *istis*, respectively, and 3 plur. *ērunt* or *ēre*.

## PRESENT, [defend; do defend; am defending.]

am-	ō k,	ās,	āt,	āmūs,	ātīs,	ant.
mon-	eō,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
reg-	ō,	īs,	īt,	īmūs,	ītīs,	unt.
aud-	iō,	īs,	īt,	īmūs,	ītīs,	iunt.

## IMPERFECT, (R) [was defending; often, defended or did defend.]

am-	ābam,	ābās,	ābāt,	ābāmūs,	ābātīs,	ābant.
mon-	ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.
reg-	ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.
aud-	iēbam,	iēbās,	iēbāt,	iēbāmūs,	iēbātīs,	iēbant.

## FUTURE, (R) [shall or will defend.]

am-	ābō,	ābās,	ābāt,	ābāmūs,	ābātīs,	ābunt.
mon-	ēbō,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbunt.
reg-	am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
aud-	iam,	iēs,	iēt,	iēmūs,	iētīs,	ient.

## PAST, [defended; did defend—have defended + (perf. def.)]

amāv-	I,	istī,	īt,	īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt,
monu-						or ērē.
rex- (=regs)						
audīv-						

## PLUPERFECT, (r) [had defended.]

amāv-	ēram, ērās, ērāt,	ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.	ērint.
monu-					
rex-					
audīv-					

## FUTURE PAST, (r) [shall or will have defended.]

amāv-	ēro,	ēris,	ērit,	ērimūs!	ēritīs,	ērint.
monu-						
rex-						
audīv-						

## IMPERATIVE

## IMPERATIVE, (R) [defend;—do you defend.]

2.	3.	2 pl.	3 pl.
----	----	-------	-------

am-	ā, ātō,	ātō,	ātē, ātōtē,	anto.
mon-	ē, ētō;	ētō,	ētē, ētōtē,	ento.
reg-	ē, ītō,	ītō,	ītē, ītōtē,	unto.
aud-	ī, ītō,	ītō,	ītē, ītōtē,	iunto.

k O, of verbs, is sometimes short. In the golden age, it first (after the comic writers) appears short in Ovid, e. g. in nesciō, rependō, putō, estō.

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 118.

† The perfect definite (perf. with have) is used of an action done in a

## MOOD.

## (PASSIVE VOICE.)

(Obs. ~~as~~) Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *o*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. Obs. The (e) after 2nd pers. sing. means that the termin. is *re* or *ris*.

PRESENT, [*am defended—is building.*]

am-	ör,	ärüs(e),	ätür,	ämür,	ämñi,	antür.
mon-	eör,	ेरüs(e),	ëtür,	ëmür,	ëmñi,	entür.
reg-	ör,	ेरüs(e),	ëtür,	ëmür,	ëmñi,	untür.
aud-	iör,	ìrüs(e),	ítür,	ìmür,	ìmñi,	iuntür.

IMPERFECT, [*was defended* \* (not strictly imperf.)—*was building.*]

am-	äbär,	äbärüs(e),	äbätür,	äbämür,	äbämñi,	äbantür.
mon-	ébär,	ébärüs(e),	ébätür,	ébämür,	ébämñi,	ébantür.
reg-	ébär,	ébärüs(e),	ébätür,	ébämür,	ébämñi,	ébantür.
aud-	iébär,	iébärüs(e),	iébätür,	iébämür,	iébämñi,	iébantür.

FUTURE, [*shall or will be defended.*]

am-	äbör,	äbörüs(e),	äbitür,	äbimür,	äbimñi,	äbuntür.
mon-	ébör,	ébörüs(e),	ébitür,	ébimür,	ébimñi,	ébuntür.
reg-	är,	ेrüs(e),	ëtür,	ëmür,	ëmñi,	entür.
aud-	iär,	iérüs(e),	iétür,	iémür,	iémñi,	ientür.

PERFECT, [*was defended; have been defended—is built.*]

Made up of the past partic. with *sun*—(sometimes *fui*).

PLUPERFECT, [*had been defended.*]

Made up of the past partic. and *čram*—(sometimes *fučram*).

FUTURE PERFECT, [*shall or will have been defended.*]

Made up of past partic. with *čro*—(sometimes *fučro*).

## MOOD.

(R.) [*be defended*: 2 sing. like *Infin. act.*]

2.	3.	2 pl.	3 pl.
ärë, ätör,	ätör,	ämñi, ämñör,	antör.
érë, ètör,	ëtör,	ëmñi, èmñör,	entör.
ërë, ëtör,	ëtör,	ëmñi, èmñör,	untör.
ìrë, itör,	ítör,	ìmñi, ìmñör,	iuntör.

present time, (no matter of what length,) or still continuing in its completed state. *Am come* is the perf. def. of a neut. verb of motion.

\* ‘*Was being defended*’ is sometimes used, but is not a correct form.

## (ACTIVE VOICE.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT, (R) [may, should defend.]

am-	em,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
mon-	eam,	ēās,	ēāt,	ēāmūs,	ēātīs,	eant.
reg-	am,	ās,	āt,	āmūs,	ātīs,	ant.
aud-	iam,	īās,	īāt,	īāmūs,	īātīs,	iant.

IMPERFECT, (R) [might, would, should defend.]

am-	ārem,	ārēs,	ārēt,	ārēmūs,	ārētīs,	ārent.
mon-	ērem,	ērēs,	ērēt,	ērēmūs,	ērētīs,	ērent.
reg-	ērem,	ērēs,	ērēt,	ērēmūs,	ērētīs,	ērent.
aud-	īrem,	īrēs,	īrēt,	īrēmūs,	īrētīs,	īrent.

PERFECT, (r) [may, should have defended.]

amāv-	ērim,	{	ērīs, or ēris,	} ērīt,	{	ērīmūs <sup>1</sup> , or ērīmūs,	} ērītīs,	}
monu-								
rex-								

audīv-	ēsem,	issēs,	issēt,	issēmūs,	issētīs,	issent.	}
amāv-							
monu-							

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT, { (R) [to defend : to be defending.]  
IMPERF.      1.            2.            3.  
                  arē,        ērē,        ērē,4.  
                  īrē.PERFECT, } (r) [to have defended.]  
PLUPERFECT, } issē.FUTURE, [to be going, or about to defend.]  
Part. of fut. (in rus) with esse.

## PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

GERUNDS, (R) [of &c. defending.]  
                  andi,        endi,        endi,        iendi.SUPINE, (root of its own,) { [to defend—after verbs of motion.] um.  
                  [to defend<sup>\*</sup>—after some adjectives.] u.PARTIC. PRESENT, (R) [defending.]  
                  ans,        ens,        ens,        iens.

PARTIC. PERFECT, [having defended.]

None. [Supplied by quem with perf. or pluperf. subj. or by abl. absolute.]

PARTIC. FUTURE, (p) [going or about to defend.] īrus.

<sup>\*</sup> Often construed, to be defended.<sup>1</sup> The old grammarians are at variance respecting the quantity of i in rimus, ritis, of fut. perf. and perf. subj. Poets use these syllables both

## MOOD. (PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT, [may, should be defended.]

am-	ěr,	ěřs(e),	ětür,	ěmür,	ěmňl,	entär.
mon-	eär,	eärſ(e),	eätür,	eämür,	eämňl,	eantär.
reg-	är,	ärſ(e),	ätür,	ämür,	amňl,	antär.
aud-	iär,	iärſ(e),	iätür,	iämür,	iämňl,	iantär.

IMPERFECT, [might, would, should be defended.]

am-	ärér,	ärérſ(e),	ärétür,	ärémür,	ärémňl,	ärentär.
mon-	erér,	erérſ(e),	erétür,	erémür,	erémňl,	erentär.
reg-	erér,	erérſ(e),	erétür,	erémür,	erémňl,	erentär.
aud-	irér,	irérſ(e),	irétür,	irémür,	irémňl,	Irentär.

PERFECT, [may, should have been defended.]

Past partic. with *sim*—(sometimes *fučrim*).

PLUPERFECT, [might, should, would have been defended.]

Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuissem*).

## MOOD.

PRESENT,	[to be defended.]			
IMPERF.	1.	2.	3.	4.

IMPERF.	āri,	ěri,	i,	irí.
---------	------	------	----	------

PERFECT, { [to have been defended.]

PLUPERFECT, { Past partic. with *esse*—(sometimes *fuisse*).

FUTURE, [to be going or about to be defended.]

Supine (in *um*) with *iri*.

## PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

PAST PARTIC. (P)	{	defended.	}	us.
		being defended.		

PARTIC. FUTURE (R.) (implying *duty*, *necessity*, &c.)

[to be defended.]

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus	endus,	endus,	iendus.

as *long* and *short*, but the preponderance of usage appears to be in favour of *i*, in both tenses. (Zumpt.) Grotewold marks *éritus*, &c.

22. Some verbs of the third end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative, infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive* of both voices.

	Imperat.	Infin.	Impf. Subj.
(a) Active,	suscipio,	suscipe,	suscipere, suscipērem.
Passive,	suscipior,	suscipere,	suscipi, suscipērer.

(b) In the present of both voices they retain the *i* in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons :

Active,	suscipio,	suscipis, it, &c.	3 plur. suscipunt.
Passive,	suscipior,	suscipēris, Itur, &c.	3 plur. suscipiuntur.

Esse, to be.

#### INDICATIVE.

Present ( <i>I am</i> ),	sum,	ēs,	est,	sūmus, estis, sunt.
Imperf. ( <i>I was</i> ),	ēram,	eras,	erat,	erāmus, erātis, erant.
Fut. ( <i>I shall</i> or <i>will be</i> ),	ero,	eris,	erit,	erīmus, erītis, erunt.

Imperat. ( <i>be thou</i> ),	ēs (eato),	esto,	este (estote),	sunto.
------------------------------	------------	-------	----------------	--------

Subj. Pres. ( <i>I may be</i> ),	sim,	sis,	sit,	sīmus, sītis, sint.
Subj. Imp. ( <i>I might e. be</i> ),	essem*,	esses,	esset,	essēmus, essētis, essent.

Infin. esse : perf. fuisse : fut. fore or futūrum esse.

Perf. fui (*was, have been*). Tenses from r., regular.

## 23. PRONOUNS.

### (Personal Pronouns.)

	Sing.		Plur.
N.	G.	D.	A. Abl.
(a) ego,	mei,	mihi,	me,
tu,	tui,	tibi,	te,
<i>Sing.</i> & Plur. } sui,	sibi,	se	(sese).

N. Acc.	Gen.	D. Abl.
nos,	nostrum or nostri,	nōbis.
vos,	vestrum or vestri,	vōbis.

(Possessive Pronouns. All regular, except that for *mee* (voc. masc.) *mi* is used.)

( <i>mine</i> )	meus,	mea,	meum.	noster,	nostra,	nostrum ( <i>ours</i> ).
( <i>thine</i> )	tuus,	tua,	tuum.	vester,	vestra,	vestrum ( <i>yours</i> ).
	suus,	sua,	suum,	{ his, hers, its; or his own, &c.	{ theirs; or their own, &c.	

\* Forem, fores, &c. is also used as imperf. subj.

(c) (*Demonstrative*).

[*Hic (this\*, the latter); ille (that, the former); is (that, antecedent to qui); ipse (-self, myself, thyself, himself, &c.); iste (that, that of yours); idem (the same).]*]

	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	m. hic,	hujus,	huic,	hunc,	hoc,
	f. haec,			hanc,	hac,
	n. hoc,			hoc,	hoc.
<i>Plur.</i>	m. hi,	horum,	his,	hos,	his.
	f. hæ,	harum,		has,	
	n. hæc,	horum,		haec,	
<i>Sing.</i>	m. is,	eius,	ei,	eum,	eo,
	f. ea,			eam,	ea,
	n. id,			id,	eo.
<i>Plur.</i>	m. ii †,	eorum,	iis ‡,	eos,	iis ‡.
	f. eæ,	earum,		eas,	
	n. eă,	eorum,		eă,	
<i>Sing.</i>	m. ille,	illius,	illi,	illum,	illo,
	f. illa,			illam,	illâ,
	n. illud,			illud,	illo.
<i>Plur.</i>	m. illi,	illorum,	illis,	illos,	illis.
	f. illæ,	illarum,		illas,	
	n. illă,	illorum,		illă,	
<i>Sing.</i>	m. iste,	istius,	isti,	istum,	isto,
	f. ista,			istam,	istâ,
	n. istud,			istud,	isto.
<i>Plur.</i>	m. isti,	istoruin,	istis,	istos,	istis
	f. istœ,	istarum,		istas,	
	n. istă,	istorum,		istă,	
<i>Sing.</i>	m. ipse,	ipsius,	ipsi,	ipsum,	ipso,
	f. ipsa,			ipsam,	ipsâ,
	n. ipsum,			ipsum,	ipso.
<i>Plur.</i>	m. ipsi,	ipsorum,	ipsis,	ipsos,	ipsis.
	f. ipsæ,	ipsarum,		ipsas,	
	n. ipsă,	ipsorum,		ipsă,	
<i>Sing.</i>	m. idem,	eiusdem,	eidem,	eundem,	eodem,
	f. eädem,			eandem,	eädem,
	n. Idem,			Idem,	eodem.
<i>Plur.</i>	m. iïdem,	eorundem,	iisdem,	eosdem,	iisdem.
	f. eëdem,	earundem,		easdem,	
	n. eädem,	eorundem,		eädem,	

\* The pronouns that mean 'that,' become *he*, *she*, *it*, &c. when they agree with *man*, *woman*, or *thing* understood.

† Or *ei*.

‡ Or *cis*.

(d) (*Relative.*)

	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	m. qui,	cujus,	cul,	quem,	quo,
	f. quæ,			quam,	qua,
	n. quod,			quod,	quo.
Plur.	m. qui,	quorum,	qui <b>bus</b> ,	quos,	qui <b>bus</b> ,
	f. quæ,	quarum,		quas,	
	n. quæ,	quorum,		quæ,	

(e) The interrogative pronoun is,

- { (1) quis, quæ, quid (generally used as a *substantive*).
- { (2) qui, quæ, quod (——— an *adjective*).

The second is gone through exactly like the relative; and so is the first, with the exception, of course, of the neut. sing. *quid*.

(f) *Quis* is also 'any' (indefinite); the fem. sing. and neut. pl. are then sometimes *qua*.

(g) The compounds of *qui*, *quis*, follow the declension of those pronouns. In the following list the appended syllables in italics are added unaltered to the case of *quis* or *qui*.

Qui-dam,	a certain one.
Qui-vis,	
Qui-libet,	any you please.
Quis-quam,	{ any; any single one (when it is denied that there are any).
Aliquis,	{ any; some (though not much or many : ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod. Neut. pl. -qua).
Quis-piam,	some, somebody.
Quis-que,	each. (Unusquisque, each one.)
Quisquis,	whoever (used without a substantive : neut. quicquid).
Qui-cunque,	whoever; whatever (used with a subst.).
Equis !	{ (does) any? (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always equa. It expects the answer <i>none</i> .)
Uter,	{ which (of two): uterque, each (utraque, utrumque; G. -iusque).
Alius (a, ud),	another; other. (The first of two <i>alii</i> 's is <i>some</i> .)
Alter,	the other (of two); another; one more.
Talis,	such; antecedent to <i>qualis</i> (as).
Tantus,	so great; antecedent to <i>quantus</i> (as).
Tot,	so many; antecedent to <i>quot</i> (as).

( $\Leftrightarrow$ ) The compounds of *quis* have generally

Neuter *quid* when used *without* } a substantive.  
Neuter *quod* when used *with* }

( $\Leftrightarrow$ ) The *quid* is generally written *quic* before *q.*  
Thus, *quicquam* (*quidquam*), ‘any thing;’ *quicquid* (*quidquid*), ‘whatever.’

#### 24. IRREGULAR VERBS.

(1.) *Poasum*, Infin. *posse*, I am able ; I can.

*Pres. Ind.* *poasum*, *potes*, *potest*, *possimus*, *potestis*, *possunt*.

*Pres. Subj.* *possim*, *possis*, *possit*, *possimus*, *possitis*, *possint*.

*Imp. Subj.* *possem*, *posses*, *posset*, *possemus*, *possetis*, *possent*.

*Root of Perf.* *potu*. (See page 50, 149.)

*Imp. Ind.* *poteram*. *Fut.* *potero*.

(2.)  $\begin{cases} \text{Volo, am willing ; wish.} \\ \text{Nolo, am unwilling (for non volo).} \\ \text{Malo, had rather (for magis or mage volo).} \end{cases}$

*Pres.*  $\begin{cases} \text{volo, vis, vult, volimus, vultis, volunt.} \\ \text{nolo, non vis, non vult, nolimus, non vultis, nolunt.} \\ \text{malo, mavis, mavult, malimus, mavultis, malunt.} \end{cases}$

*Subj. Pres.* *vēlim*, *nēlim*, *mālim*. (is, it : *imus*, *itis*, int.)

*Subj. Imperf.* *vellem*, *nollem*, *mallem*. (es, et : *emus*, *etis*, ent.)

*Infinitive*, *velle*, *nolle*, *malle*.

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles (except *volens*, *nolens*), nor imperative, except *noli*, *nolito*,—*nolite*.

*Noli putare* (be unwilling to think =) do not think.

(3.) *Fero* \*, *tūli*, *lātum*, to bear. *Infin.* *ferre*. *Imper.* *fer*; *ferte*.

*Pres. Indic.* *fero*, *fers*, *fert* ; *ferimus*, *fertis*, *ferunt*.

*Imp. Subj.* *ferrem*, *ferres*, &c. [Pass. *ferrer*.]

~~for~~ *Fertur* for *feritur*; *ferris* for *fereris*.

(4.) *Fio*, become ; am made or done : partly used as pass. of *facio*.

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has *fīrem* for *ferīrem*, and an irregular infin. *fieri*. It has no *perf.*; *factus sum*, *ēram*, &c. being in use.

*Imperf. Subj.* *fīrem*, *fieres*, *fieret* ; *fieremus*, *fieretis*, *fierent*.  
*Infin. Pres.* *fieri*.

\* This verb has *fers*, *fert*, *fertur*, for *feris*, *ferit*, *ferītur* ; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem*, *ferre*, &c., for *ferērem*, *ferēre*.

(5.) *Eo (ivi, Itum, ire), go.*

*Pres. Indio.* eo, is, it ; imus, itis, eunt.

*Pres. Subj.* eam, eas, eat ; eamus, eatis, eant.

*Participle,* iens, euntis, eunti, &c.

*Gerunds,* eundi, eundo, eundum.

*Imp.* ibam. *Fut.* ibo. *Imperf.* i. *Imperf. Subj.* irem. *Perfect,* ivi : in the compounds generally ii.

(6.) 

<i>Queo, am able, can.</i> <i>Nequeo, am unable, cannot.</i>	These verbs are conjugated like <i>eo</i> , as far as they are in use : 3 plur. <i>queunt, nequeunt</i> . Subj. pres. <i>queam, nequeam</i> , &c.
---	--

## 25. SUBSTANTIVES.

Deus,	{ God. <i>Voc.</i> Deus. <i>Nom.</i> and <i>Dat. plur.</i> gene-
	rally take <i>i</i> for <i>e</i> . <i>Dii</i> or <i>Di</i> ; <i>Diis</i> or <i>Dis</i> .
Jupiter,	<i>Jupiter.</i> <i>G.</i> Jovis, &c.
Bos,	{ bull, cow, ox. <i>G.</i> bovis ; <i>G. pl.</i> boum ; <i>D.</i> bōbus or būbus.
Respublīca,	{ republic, commonwealth. <i>G.</i> republiea, &c. ; the substantive <i>res</i> , and the adj. <i>publica</i> in agreement with it.
Jusjurandum,	{ oath. <i>G.</i> jurisjurandi, &c. ; <i>jus</i> neut., with the partic. <i>jurandum</i> in agreement.
Vis,	strength : —, vim, vi ; vires, virium, viribus.
Vir,	man : <i>viri</i> , &c., as 2nd : <i>viri</i> , virōrum, &c.

~~or~~ *Aēr, aether*, have generally the acc. *aēra, aethēra*.

## 26. GENDERS.

I. DECL. FEMININE, except names of men and designations of men.

II. DECL. MASCULINE, except *um* neuter.

But *alvus, humus, vannus, colus*,  
Though belonging to the second,  
Are feminine : and *virus* (juice),  
And *pelagus* are neuter reckoned :  
*Vulgas* mostly goes with these,  
But may be masculine, if you please.

III. DECL. (A.) Masculine terminations :

{ er, or, os,  
es increasing,  
o, when not do, go, io.

er) Neuters many end in *er*,  
As *verber, iter, uber, ter* ;  
With plants in *er*, as *acer* and *papaver*,  
With many others : add to these *cadaver*.

- or) Of neuters there are four in *or*  
*Marmor, æquor, ador, cor*:  
 A feminine is *arbor* (tree),  
 A second you will hardly see.
- os) Neuters are *chaos, melos, os*:  
 But feminine are *os* and *dos*.
- es) Of *es* increasing, neuter *es*  
 Is found : and feminine are these ;  
*Quies, merces, merges, seges,*  
 With *compes, inquies*, and *teges*.
- o) *Caro* is flesh : remember this  
 As *feminini generis*.

## (B.) Feminine terminations :

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{do, go, io,} \\ \text{as, is, aus, x,} \\ \text{es not increasing,} \\ \text{s impure.} \end{array} \right.$

- do, go, io) *Cardo, ordo, and papilio*,  
 With *ligo, margo, vespertilio*,  
 Are masculine : add to these *quaternio*  
*Pugio, stellio, scipio, ternio* \*.
- as) Three are the *masculines* in *as*,  
*As, adamas, and elphas* :  
 Three are the *neuters* too in *as*,  
*Vas (vasis), with nefas and fas*.
- is) Many words that end in *is*  
 Are *masculini generis* :  
*Panis, piscis, crinis, finis,*  
*Ignis, lapis, pulvis, cinis,*  
*Orbis, amnis, and canalis,*  
*Sanguis, unguis, glie, annalis,*  
*Fascis, axis, funis, ensis,*  
*Fustis, rectis, vomis, mensis,*  
*Vermis, torris, cucumis,*  
*Postis, follis, mugilis,*  
*Cassis, cossis, callis, collis,*  
 Add *sentis* ;—*caulis* too, and *pollis*.
- x) *Calix, and codex (codicis)*,  
 Are *masculini generis* ;  
 So *vertex, cortex*, and the same the case is  
 With *pollex, grex*, and with *thorax (thoracis)*.
- s impure) *Dodrans, quadrans, mons, and pons*,  
 Are masculine, with *rudens, dens, and fons*:

\* With a few more : such as *unio* (pearl), *optio* (a military substitute), &c. : those which are abstract nouns are all feminine.

Add *adeps* (fat), with *confusus*,  
*Oriens*, *hydrops*, *occidens*.

---

(C.) Neuter termination :

{ c, a, t, e, l, n,  
 { ar, ur, us.

- 1) *Sol*, the sun that brightly shines,  
*Mugil* and *sal* are masculines.
  - n) The masculines that end in *n*  
 Are *pecten*, *lien*, *ren*, and *splen*.
  - ur) These are the masculines in *ur*,  
*Vultur*, *turtur*, *furfur*, *fur*.
  - us) Two names of beasts that end in *us*  
 Are masculine, *lepus* (hare) and *mus*.  
 These too are feminines in *us*,  
*Juventus*, *virtus*, *serititus*\*,  
*Tellus*, *senectus*, *incus*, *solus*,  
 With *pecus* (pecūdīs), and *palus*.
- 

IV. DECL. *Us* masculine : *u* neuter.

- us) But these are feminines in *us*,  
*Tribus*, *acus*, *porticus*,  
*Domus*, *nurus*, *socrus*, *anus*,  
*Idus* (iduum), and *manus*.

V. DECL. Feminine. But,

*Meridies* is masculine ; and so  
 Is *dies* in plurali numero †.

OBS. ~~most~~ Some nouns have a particular gender, from their meaning.

The names of *males*, of *rivers*, *months*, and *winds*,  
 Remember well ; for masculine are these.  
 The names of *females*, *countries*, *islands*, *towns*,  
 Are feminine ; so are the names of *trees*.

But to these rules there are many exceptions : for instance, the names of *trees*, *plants*, &c. in *er* of the third are *neuter* (see rule under A) : and the plural names of towns in *i* are *masc.* ; those in *um*, and in *er*, *ur*, of the third are *neut.*

---

\* With the exception of these four words, nouns in *tus*, *us*, without personal meaning, are mostly nouns of the fourth decl. from the *supine* root.

† In the singular it is commonly *masc.* ; seldom *feminine*, except when a *fixed day* is spoken of, or when it is equivalent to a *length of time*.

## 27. DECLENSIONS OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

	Nom.	Genitive.	Accus.
Pers. 1. { Sing. Plur.	I we	my or mine our or ours	me. us.
Pers. 2. { Sing. Plur.	thou { ye you}	thy or thine your or yours	thee. you.
Pers. { Sing. { mas. fem. neut. Plur.	he she it they	his her or hers its their or theirs	him her it them.
Relative and Interroga- tive.	who which	whose { of which or whose }	whom which.
Demonstrative	{ this, plural these. that, plural those.		

## 28. TABLE OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

## Indicative Mood.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	{ I defend I am defending I do defend }	. . . . . I am defended.
Imperfect.	I was defending	. . . . . (none).
Perfect- Definite.	{ I have defended	. . . . . I have been defended.
Perfect.	{ I defended I did defend }	. . . . . I was defended.
Pluperfect.	I had defended	. . . . . I had been defended.
Future.	I shall or will defend	. . . . . I shall or will be defended.
Future- Perfect.	{ I shall or will have defended	. { I shall or will have been defended. }

## Imperative Mood.

S.	P.	S.	P.
Defend (thou).	Defend (ye).	Be thou defended.	Be ye defended.
F 4			

## Forms that often answer to the Tenses of the Latin Subjunctive.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	<i>I may or can defend . . . I may or can be defended.</i>	
Imperfect.	<i>I might, could, should, or I might, could, should, or would defend.</i>	<i>would be defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>I may or can have defended. I may or can have been de-fended.</i>	
Pluperfect.	<i>I might, could, should, or I might, could, should, or would have defended.</i>	<i>would have been defended.</i>

## Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>To defend . . . . . To be defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>To have defended . . . . To have been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>To be going or about to do. To be going or about to be fended.</i>

## Participles.

Present.	<i>Defending . . . . .</i>	<i>{ Defended (past part.), Being defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>Having defended . . . .</i>	
Future.	<i>Going or about to defend . . .</i>	<i>Going or about to be de-fended.</i>

## 29. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus,	<i>good,</i>	<i>melior,</i>	<i>optimus.</i>
malus,	<i>bad,</i>	<i>pejor,</i>	<i>pessimus.</i>
parvus,	<i>little,</i>	<i>minor,</i>	<i>minimus.</i>
magnus,	<i>great,</i>	<i>major,</i>	<i>maximus.</i>
multus,	<i>much,</i>	<i>plus (neut.),</i>	<i>plurimus.</i>

*Nom. Acc. Plus. Gen. pluris (no other case in sing.). Plural,  
N.A. plures, plura. Gen. plurium. D. pluribus.*

## 30. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

*Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,  
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,  
Tenus, sine, pro, and præ*

## Q U E S T I O N S.

---

[Those on the *Syntax* have an asterisk before them.]

**N.B.** The pupil should learn the Terminations of Substantives (p. 109) and of the third persons of the Verb (p. 114) as soon as possible.

---

1. Give the accusative endings. (9.)
2. Repeat the terminations of the third persons. (32.)
3. Give the genitive endings. (40.)
- \*4. In what case is the *price* or *value* put sometimes? [*The Gen.* 47.]
5. What are the endings of nouns expressing *virtues*, *rites*, *dispositions*, &c.? (47, h.)
- \*6. By what case are some *neuter* adjectives followed? *What* adjectives are so used? (*Ans.* Indefinite numerals.)  
What substantive is so used? (*Ans.* The indeclinable substantive '*nihil*', 'nothing.' 56.)
- \*7. What often stands as the nominative case to the verb? (60, n.)  
When an *infinitive mood* (or *sentence*) is the nominative case to the verb, where is it placed in *English*? (*Ans.* After the verb, being represented by the pronoun 'it,' which is not to be translated. 60, n.)  
In what *gender* is the adjective then put? (*Ans.* In the *neuter*.)
8. How is the *acc. plur.* got from the *acc. sing.*? What must 'um' be turned into, to give the *acc. plur.* of the second? What is always the termination of the *acc. neut. plural*? (64.)
9. By what *prepositions* is the *dat.* construed? [67. **N.B.** These prepositions are called *signs of the dative*.]
- a) What are the signs of the *ablative*? (67.)
- b) By what preposition is an *ablative* of time construed? (*Ans.* By *in* or *at*.)
- c) How is an *acc.* of time construed? (*Ans.* By 'for,' or without any *prepos.* 72.)
10. To what declension do adjectives in 'is' belong? [*The third.*]

- Of what gender are they ? [m. and f.] What is their neuter form ? [e.] Is their ablative e or i? [i.]<sup>a</sup>
- \*11. In what case do you put the name of a town *where* a thing was done ? When is the town *where* put in the *abl.*? When in the *gen.*? (72, s.)
  - \*12. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *when*? [In the *abl.*]
  - \* In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *how long*? [In the *acc.*] Is 'for' a sign of the *dative*, when it stands before a noun of time ? [Ans. No, of the *acc.*.]
  - \*13. How may the *third plural* be got from the *third singular*? Into what must 'it' of the perfect be changed ? 'it' of the fourth ? 'it' in 'erit'? all other it's ?
  - 14. Give the terminations of the *nom.* and *gen.* plural.
  - \*15. What case does *in* govern when it means 'into'? [*Acc.*] 'in'? [*Abl.*]
- 
- ex govern i [Abl.]*
- \*16. How must 'not' with the imperative be translated<sup>b</sup> ? [By *n&t.*] What word must stand before the *not* in English ? [The 'do' of the imperative.]
  - \*17. How is the thing *with which* any thing is done translated ? or, what case answers to 'with what'? [*Abl.*]
  - 18. When 'thing' or 'things' is left out, in what *gender* must the adjective be put ? [*Neut.*]
  - \*19. What cases follow verbs of *accusing*, *disquitting*, *condemning*? [*Acc. of person*: *Gen. of the charge*.]
  - \*20. By what cases may 'of great colour' be translated into Latin ? [*Gen. or Abl.*]
  - \*21. In what case does a noun of *prios* stand, when it answers to 'for how much'? [In the *abl.*]
  - \*22. (a) When must the personal pronoun of the third person (*him*, *her*, *them*, &c.) be translated by *sui*, &c.? [When the pron. represents the same person as the nom. to the verb.] (b) What preposition is omitted after *give*, *cost*, the adj. *like*, &c.? [To.]
  - \*23. When is one noun said to be in *apposition* to another ? In what case is a substantive in *apposition* to another placed ? [In the same case as the subst. to which it stands in apposition.]
  - \*24. What case do *dignus*, *indignus*<sup>c</sup>, &c., govern ? [*Abl.*]
  - \*25. What case does the verb *to be* take after it ? [The same case as before it.]
  - \*26. What case do the compounds of *esse* govern ? [*The dat.*] What exception is there ? [*Possum.*]

<sup>a</sup> The manner of declining the other adjectives of the *third* is explained at p. 112, 14.

<sup>b</sup> How may the *imperative* be got from the *infinitive*? [By throwing away *re*.]

<sup>c</sup> The ablative after *dignus*, *indignus*, must be Englished by 'of.' after all of them consider what preposition we use in English, and use that, without thinking about the usual signs of the ablative.

- \*27. What does the *English infinitive* often express, but the *Latin infinitive* never? [A purpose.]
- \*28. How may the English infinitive expressing a *purpose* be translated? [By *ut* with the *subjunctive*: of which the *imperfect* follows the past tenses; the *present*, the other tenses.]
- 29. What tense is, 'he is come'? [Perf.] What tense is, 'he was come'? [Plup.] With what auxiliary do neuter verbs of motion form their *perfect definite*?
- 30. How is the *subjunctive present*, standing in a principal sentence, to be translated? [As an *imperative*, or to express a *wish*. *Veniat* = *let him come*; or *may he come*.]
- (a) How must the *perfect* be construed, when it is followed by the *subjunctive present*? [By the *perf. definite*.]
- \*31. When is the English *indicative* after 'that' to be translated by the *Latin subjunctive* governed by *ut*? [When that follows *so* or *such*.—It then introduces a *consequence*.]
- \*32. What tenses of the *subjunctive* are the *regular attendants* of the *past tenses* of the *indicative*? [The *imperf.* and *pluperf.*]
- \*33. When is 'to' never a *sign* of the *dative*? [After verbs of *motion*: *come*, *send*, *fetch*, &c.] \*How is the *place to* which translated? (By *Acc.*) \*How is the *place from* which translated? (By the *Abl.*) When must *ad*, 'to', be expressed? (Ans. When the place is not the name of a *town* or *small island*; and when the motion is to a *person*.)
- \*34. How is the *supine* in *am* used? (Ans. after verbs of *motion*. How is the *sup.* in *am* Englished? (Ans. by the *infin. acc.*) How is the *sup.* in *u* used? (Ans. After some adjectives, such as *hard*, *disgraceful*, *pleasant*, *best*, &c.) How is the *sup.* in *u* Englished? (Ans. Regularly by the *infin. passive*: but often by the *infin. active*.)
- \*35. How is the want of the *perfect participle* + *active* supplied? (Ans. By *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf.* of the *subjunctive*; or by the *abl. absolute*.)
- \*36. What is the *ablative absolute*? \*Is the substantive of the *abl. absol.* to be construed by a *preposition*? [No.] \*By what participle governing its noun may the ablative absolute often be construed, when the participle is of the *perf. pass.*? [By the *partio.* with 'having.']
- \*37. What substantives follow the rules for the proper names of towns? [Ans. *Domus* and *rus*: also the genitives *humi* and *militiae*. See 33.]
- 38. Where is 'cum' placed with the ablatives of personal pronouns? [After them and joined to them: *mecum*, &c.]
- \*39. What case do adjectives signifying *desire*, &c. govern? [Gen.]
- \*41. In what case is the *agent* or *person by whom* put? (Ans. In the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*: but after the part. in *dus*, in the *dative*.)
- 42. Mention some words, &c., after which the *gerund* or *part.* in *dus*

‡ What English participle answers to the *partic.* in *ns*? [Part. in *ng.*] in *us*? [Part. in *d*, *t*, or *n.*] *rus*? [Going to—; or, about to—.] in *ndus*? [Form of *inf. pass.*]

- follows in the *dat.* [ *Utilis*, *profitable* or *good for*; *inutilis*, *unprofitable*; *idoneus*, *fit for*; *tempus impendere*, *to spend time in or on*; *vacare*, *to have leisure*; *studere*, *aim at*; *devote oneself to*.]
- \*43. How is what is in form the *pass. infin.* to be translated after 'is' 'are'? [Ans. By the part. in *dus.*]
  - \*44. What verbs govern the dative? (191.) \*How is the *pluperf. indic.* to be translated after 'if'? [By *plup. subj.*]
  - 45. In the infinitives made up of two words, is the participle to agree with its substantive or not? (Ans. To agree.) Is the word in *um* in the *fut. infin. pass.* a participle? What is it? [Supine.]  
Can it then agree with the substantive? [No.]
  - \*46. Must you look for the *antecedent* to the relative in the relative sentence or not? [Generally not.] \*Is the *case* of the relative determined by a word in its own, or in the preceding sentence?
  - 47. Can the verbs that govern the *dative* be used in the *first* or *second* persons in the passive? In what person only can they be used in the passive? [In the *third sing.*]
  - 48. How is the present *infin.* construed after *licuit*? *oportuit*? [Generally by the *perf.*]
  - \*49. What verbs govern the gen.? (244.)
  - \*50. \_\_\_\_\_ abl.? (221, 245.)
  - \*51. What cases do *penitet*, *pudet*, &c., take after them? (Ans. An *accusative* of the *person*, *feeling*; a *gen.* of the *thing* or *person* about which the emotion is felt.)
  - \*52. How is 'must' translated? [By the part. in *dus* with the verb *esse*.] When is the part. in *dus* to agree with the subst. †? [When the verb governs the *accusative*.] When the verb does not govern the *acc.*, in what case, &c. must the participle stand? [In the *nom. neut.*, and then *esse* will always stand in the *third singular*.]
- 

Go through *prodesse* (129, p. 44).

\_\_\_\_\_ *occidere*, *killing* (175, p. 58).

\_\_\_\_\_ *epistola scribenda* (181, p. 59).

\_\_\_\_\_ *scribendum est milii* (207, p. 67).

\_\_\_\_\_ *mihi creditur* (237, p. 77).

\_\_\_\_\_ *milii ire licet* (261, p. 83).

\_\_\_\_\_ *me ire oportet* (269, p. 85).

Mention the participles of *loquor* (242, p. 78) ‡.

† The subst., that is, which is governed by the verb that follows *must*. The nom. before *must* becomes the *dat.* after *esse*, but is often omitted.

‡ The *fut. inf.* of a deponent verb is the *fut. in rus* with *esse*.

## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. To think nothing of.	To reckon at nothing ( <i>nihil ducere</i> or <i>facere</i> ).
2. To value highly <sup>a</sup> .	To value at a high price ( <i>magni aestimare</i> ).
3. { To think little of <sup>b</sup> . { To hold cheap.	To value at a little price ( <i>parvi aestimare</i> ).
4. No stability.	<i>Nothing</i> of stability ( <i>nihil stabilitatis</i> ).
Some time.	Something of time ( <i>aliquid temporis</i> ).
Much good.	Much of good ( <i>multum boni</i> ).
How much pleasure.	How much of pleasure ( <i>quantum voluptatis</i> ).
<i>q.v.</i> Hence 'no,' 'some,' (when they denote quantity, not number,) 'much,' 'how much,' are to be translated by 'nihil,' 'aliquid,' 'multum,' 'quantum,' followed by the gen.	
5. He did it unwillingly.	He <i>unwillingly</i> did it.
6. It is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful.
7. It is the part — duty — business — mark — character	of a wise man. It is of a wise man.
8. To condemn a man to death.	To condemn a man <i>of the head</i> .

<sup>a</sup> To value *very* highly (*maximi aestimare*).

<sup>b</sup> The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the 'of,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH.LATIN.

9. As many as possible.  
                        he can or could. } As the most (*quam plurimi*).  
 The greatest possible.  
                        he can or could. } As the greatest (*quam maximus*).  
 [That is, 'as many as the most',  
 'as great as greatest,' &c.]  
 On the mountain highest.  
 In the water middle (in *summo*  
*monte*; in *mediâ aquâ*).  
 Is going to lie down (*culatum*, sup.).  
 It is hard in saying (difficile est  
*dictu*; supine).  
 During playing (*inter ludendum*).
10. On the top of the mountain.  
 In the middle of the water.
11. Is going to bed.  
 12. It is hard to say.
13. Whilst they were (are, &c.)  
 playing.
14. The intention of writing a  
 letter.
15. We must cultivate virtue.
16. Caius must write.
17. We must believe Caius.
18. The ways of expressing the  
 purpose are,  
 He comes to see the games.  
 {  
 (a) Venit ut ludos spectet.  
 (b) Venit ludos spectatum (sup.).  
 (c) Venit ludos spectatūrus.  
 (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.  
 To which add,  
 (e) Venit causâ (for the purpose)  
 ludorum spectandorum; and  
 (f) Instead of *ut*, the relative  
 may be used:  
 He sent ambassadors, qui pacem  
*petrērent* (to sue for peace).  
 Mihi ire licet (it is permitted to me  
 to go).  
 Mihi ire licuit (it was permitted to  
 me to go).  
 Me ire oportet.  
 Me ire oportuit.
19. (a) I may go.  
 (b) I might have gone.
20. (a) I ought to go.  
 (b) I ought to have gone.

## INDEX I.

## ENGLISH.

[For the prepositions that always govern the abl. see p. 128, 30.]

ABOUT, circa, circum (prep.).	assistance, auxilium.
— the same time, sub idem tempus.	assumed appearance, simulatio.
above, super, supra (prep.).	at, apud <i>with aco.</i>
accident, casus ; G. ὁμ. By accident, casu.	— nothing, nihil.
according to, secundum (prep.).	— a great price, magni.
account of (on), ob, propter (prep.).	— little price, parvi.
across, trans (prep.).	— a very great price, maximi.
accuse, accusare.	Athenian, Atheniensis.
acquit, absolvēre (solv, solūt).	Athens, Athēnæ, plur.
after, post (prep.).	attentive, studiōsus ( <i>gen.</i> ).
against, adversus : contra (prep.).	avarice, avaritia.
aim at, studēre (dat. 191).	avaricious, avārus ( <i>gen.</i> ).
air, aer, aeris, m.	avenge, vindicare.
all, omnis ; cunctus.	avoid, vitare.
allowed fact ; it is an —, constat.	autumn, auctumnus.
— (it is), constat.	awaken, excitare.
along, secundum (prep.).	
Alps, Alpes, G. ium.	B.
altar, ara.	bad, malus.
always, semper.	bad (for any purpose), inutlis, dat.
amongst, inter (prep.).	bake, coquēre (cox, coct).
— the Gauls, apud Gallos.	bark, cort-ex, l̄cis, m.
and, et ; — ac before consonants (except k sounds), atque before vowels or consonants : quē.	be in trouble (to), labōrare.
anger, ira.	bear, ursus, i.
animal, animal ; G. ēlis.	beasts (of huge beasts), bellua.
answer, respondēre (respond, respons), 191.	because, quia, 222.
any, ullus, a, um. G. ius.	becomes, fit.
Apollo, Apoll-o. G. Inia.	before, prep. ante *,
arm, brachium.	— adv. antea,
arms, arma, neut. plur.	— conj. antēquam, } 22.
art, ars. G. artis.	beguile, fallēre (fefell).
arrow, sagitta.	behind, pone (prep.).
as many as possible, quam plurimi.	behold, adspicēre ; conspicēre.
as possible, quam before the superl.	believe, credēre (dat.), 191.
ass, asinus. G. i.	benefit, beneficium.
	besides, praeter (prep.).
	best, optimus.
	better, melior.
	better (it is), præstat.
	beyond, praeter, ultra (prep.).

\* Sometimes adverb.

bigger, major.  
bind, vincere (*vinx, vinct.*).  
bird, avis. G. avis.  
bitter, amārus.  
blame, culpa.  
blind, cæcus.  
blood, sangu-is, īnis, m.  
body, corp-us, ḍoris.  
book, liber. G. libri.  
born, natus (followed by *ad*).  
both—and, et—et.  
boy, puer. G. puēri.  
break, frangere, (*frēg, fract.*).  
—— one's word, fidem violare.  
—— a law, legem violare.  
brother, frat-er, ris.  
bribery, ambītus, ūs.  
bridge, pon-s. G. tis, m.  
build, ædificare.  
—— (of a nest), construēre (*construx, construct*).  
burst, rumpēre (*rūp, rupt.*).  
bury, sepēlire (*ρ. sepult.*).  
but, sed.  
buy, emēre (*ēm, empt.*).  
by (= close by), juxta (prep.).  
by chance, casu.

## C.

call, vōcare.  
camp, castra, orum, pl.  
can, possum. See p. 50, 149.\*  
card, carpēre.  
carry on (war), gerēre (*gess, gest.*).  
Carthage, Carthāg-o, īnis.  
case of (in the), in (prep.).  
cause to be made, faciendum cu-  
rare.  
cave, antrum.  
certain, certus.  
chain, vinculum.  
chance, by, casu.  
change, mutare.  
character, mor-es, um, pl.  
chariot, currus, ūs.  
chastise, castigare.  
cherish, fovēre.  
christian, christiānus.  
citizen, civis. G. civis.  
city, urb-s. G. is.

cloak, pallium.  
close to, juxta (prep.).  
clouds, nūbes, nub-is, f.  
cold, frig-us, ḍoris.  
colour, col-or, ḍoris.  
come, vēnire (*vēn, vent.*).  
command, impērare, dat.  
common (= of common occur-  
rence), usitatus.  
condemn, damnare.  
conquer, vincēre (*vīc, vict.*).  
conquered, victus.  
contented, contentus, abl.  
contrary, contrarius.  
cook, coquēre (*cox, coct.*).  
cost, stare (*stēt*) [abl. of price].  
country, patria.  
—— into the, rus.  
—— in the, ruri.  
—— from the, rure.  
courageously, fortiter.  
cover, tegēre (*tex, tect.*).  
—— (= overlay, coat with) ob-  
ducēre (*dux, duct.*).  
crime, flagitium.  
crop, seg-es, ētis, f.  
crown, corōna.  
—— cingēre (*surround*).  
cry out, clamare.  
custom, consuetūd-o, īnis.  
customary, usitatus.

## D.

daily, quotidie.  
dance, saltare.  
danger, pericūlum.  
dangerous, periculōsus.  
day, dies, ei, m.  
dead, mortuuus.  
death, mor-s, tis.  
death, to (after to condemn), capi-  
tis.  
deceive, fallēre (*fefell*); decipēre,  
io (*decēp, decept.*).  
defraud, fraudare (abl.).  
deprive, privare (abl.).  
desire, cupidit-as, ātis.  
desirous, cupidus (gen.).  
devote oneself to, studēre (dat.),  
191.

\* Or page 123

difficult, difficilis.  
 displease, displacere (dat.), 191.  
 discharge, fungi (funct), abl.  
 discover, detegere, 168.  
 disgraceful, turpis.  
 disregard, negligere (lex, lect).  
 divide, dividere (divis).  
 do, facere, io (fec, fact).  
 — agere (eg, act).  
 — good to, prodesse (profu, dat.).  
 dog, canis. G. is.  
 dragon, drac-o, ñonis.  
 dust, pulv-is, eris, m.  
 dutiful affection, piet-as, atis.  
 duty, officium.  
 dwell, habitare.

## E.

each other (after 'contrary to'),  
 inter se.  
 earth, terra.  
 easily, facile.  
 easy, facilis.  
 eat, edere (ed, es).  
 economy, parsimonia.  
 effectual, efficax.  
 elegance, elegantia.  
 elephant, elephas, elephant-is.  
 endued with, praeditus (abl.).  
 enemy, host-is. G. is.  
 engaged in, to be (of battles, &c.),  
 inter-esse.  
 enjoy, frui (abl.).  
 envy, invidere (dat.).  
 estate, fundus, i.  
 eternal, sempiternus.  
 even, etiam.  
 — (after *not*), quidem, the 'not'  
 being translated by 'nē?' See  
 p. 62.  
 evening, vesper (abl. *vesper-e ori*).  
 every, omnis.  
 — day, quotidie.  
 evil, malum.  
 — (after, 'some,' 'how much,'  
 'no'), the gen. mali.  
 example, exemplum.  
 excellent, praestans.  
 expense, sumptus, us.  
 expire, expirare.

## F.

face, facies, ei.  
 fact : it is an allowed —, constat.  
 faith, fides, ei.  
 faithful, fidelis.  
 fall down, decidere.  
 father, pa-ter, tris.  
 fault, culpa.  
 favour, favere (fav, faut, dat.).  
 fear, v. timere ; metuere.  
 — subst. metus, us.  
 feel, sentire (sens).  
 fetch water (to), aquatum.  
 fidelity, fides, ei.  
 field (in the), militiae.  
 fight, pugnare.  
 figure, figura.  
 fill, complere (plēv, plēt).  
 find, repērire.  
 finish, finire.  
 firm, firmus.  
 first, primus.  
 fish, pisc-is, is, m.  
 fit for, idoneus, dat.  
 flay, deglubere.  
 flock, grex, grēg-is, m.  
 flourish, florere.  
 fly out, evolare.  
 folly, stultitia.  
 fond, cupidus (gen.).  
 food, cibus, i.  
 for, before a noun of time, must not  
 be translated. The noun must  
 be in the acc.  
 forage, to, pabulatum, supine.  
 forces, copiae.  
 forget, oblivisci (oblitus ; gen. or  
 acc.).  
 fortune, fortuna.  
 found (a city), condere (condid,  
 condit).  
 fourth, quartus.  
 fox, vulp-es. G. is, f.  
 free, liber, libera, &c. (abl.)  
 friend, amicus.  
 friendship, amicitia.  
 frighten, terrere.  
 from (= out of), ex (prep.).  
 frugality, parsimonia.  
 fruit, fructus, us.  
 future, futurua.

## G.

game, lusus, ūs.  
 garden, hortus.  
 garland, corōna.  
 gate, porta.  
 Gaul, Gallus.  
 gentle, mitis.  
 German, Germānus.  
 get possession of, potiri (potior),  
     abl.  
 gift, donum.  
 girl, puella.  
 give, dāre (dēd, dāt): d. of person;  
     acc. of thing.  
 go, away, ab-ire, 161.  
 — to bed, } cubitum ire, 161.  
 — to roost, }  
 — a hunting, venātūm ire, 161.  
 — ire (eo). See p. 124.  
 gold, aurum.  
 good, bonus.  
 good (after 'some,' 'how much,'  
     'no,' &c.), boni.  
 good for, &c., utilis, dat.  
 government, imperium.  
 grain (a), granum.  
 great, magnus.  
 greater, major.  
 greatest, maximus: generally trans-  
     lated by summus, highest,  
     when the things spoken of have  
     not really size; for instance,  
     qualities of the mind.  
 greatest possible (the), quam  
     maximus.  
 greatness, magnitūd-o, ūnis.  
 ground (on the), humi.

## H.

hang over (us), immēnere.  
 hand, manus, ūs.  
 — to be at, adesse (adsum).  
 harm: to do — to, obesse, dat.  
     (obsum).  
 happy, felix; beātus.  
 have, habēre.  
 head, cap-ut, ūtis, n.  
 heal, medēri, dat.  
 hear, audire.  
 heart, cor, cordis, n.  
 heat, cal-or, ūris.  
 heavy, gravis.

## hen, gallina.

sua, &c. f. of suus.  
 her, { ejus (gen. when it does not  
     relate to nom. of sentence).  
 herself (when used with a noun),  
     ipsa.

himself, ipse, a, um; G. ius, &c.  
 his, suus (when relating to the  
     nom. of the sentence; if it  
     does not relate to the nom. or  
     principal word of the sen-  
     tence, it must be translated  
     by the gen. ejus).

hitherto, adhuc.

hold, tenēre (tenu).

hold cheap, parvi cestimare.

— one's tongue, tacēre.

home, at, domi: from, domo; to,  
     domum.

honey, mel, mell-is, n.

honour (meaning fidelity, &c.),  
     fides, ei.

hope for, spērare.

hornet, crabro, ūnis.

horse, equus, i.

house, domus, f.

how (before an adj.), quam.

— much, quantum.

huge, ingen-s, tis.

human, humānus.

humour, indulgēre (induls, in-  
     dult), dat.

hunting (a), venatum, susp.

hurt, nocēre (dat.): lēdēre, acc.  
     (læs.)

husbandman, agricōla, m.

## I.

ignorance, ignoratio, ūnis.

ignorant, ignārus (gen.).

illuminate, illustrare.

immense, ingen-s, tis.

impel, impellēre (pūl, puls).

in, in (abl.).

into, in (acc.).

inclined, propensus.

increase (trans.), aug-ere (aux.  
     auct.).

indulge, indulgēre (induls, in-  
     dult), dat.

industry, industria.

injure, nocēre, dat.

injury, *injuria*.  
 intention, *consilium*.  
 invent, *invēnire* (*vēn*, *vent*).  
 irritate, *irritare*.  
 is (it), *est*.  
 island, *insula*.  
 its, *suus* (when relating to *noun* of sentence : when not, *eius*).  
 itself, *ipse*, *a*, *um*. G. *Ius*.

## J.

journey, *it-er*, *inēris*, n.  
 judge, *jud-ex*, *īcis*.  
 — v. *judicare*.  
 Jupiter, *Jupiter*. G. *Jovis*.

## K.

keep, *servare*.  
 king, *rex*, *rēg-is*.  
 knowledge, *scientia*.  
 known (it is), *constat*.

## L.

labour, v. *labōrare*.  
 — lab-or, *ōris*.  
 large, *grandis*.  
 laugh, } *ridēre* (*ris*).  
 laugh at,  
 law, *lex*, *legis*.  
 lead, *dūcēre* (*dux*, *duct*).  
 leaf, *folium*.  
 learn, *discēre* (*didic*).  
 — by heart, *ediscēre*.  
 least, *minimus*.  
 legion, *legio*, *ōnis*.  
 less, min-or. Neut. us.  
 let *must* be untranslated, being a sign of the imperative.  
 letter, *epistōla*.  
 lie, *mendacium*.  
 life, *vita*.  
 light, *lu-x*, *cis*.  
 — (adj.) *levis*.  
 like, *similis*, dat.  
 — very, *simillimus*.  
 lion, *le-o*, *ōnis*.  
 little, *parvus*.  
 — (with), *parvo*.  
 live, *vivēre* (*vix*, *vict*).  
 long, *longus*.  
 lose, a-mittēre (*mis*, *miss*).

love, *amara*.  
 lust, *libid-o*, *Inis*.  
 M.  
 magistrate, *magistrātus*, *īta*.  
 man, *vir*, *homo*, *98*.  
 many, *multus*.  
 marry, *nubēre* (*nups*, *nupt*), *dat*.  
 Marseilles, *Massilia*.  
 master (who *teaches*), *magister*.  
 — (who *owns*), *domīnus*.  
 — v. *domare* (*domu*, *domīt*).  
 may, *licet*. } See 259, 260  
 might, *licuit*. } (p. 83).  
 means (by — of), *per* (prep.).  
 melt, *liqueſcēre*, *licu*.  
 middle of, *medius* (in agreement with its noun, 144).  
 mind, *anīmua*.  
 mine, *meus*. Voc. m. *mi*.

miserable, *miser*.  
 misery, *miseria*.  
 money, *pecunia*.  
 moon, *luna*.  
 mother, *māter*, *matris*.  
 mountain, *mon-s*, *tis*, *m*.  
 mouth (of a river), *ostium*.  
 move, *movēre*; *intrans*. *movēri* (*mōv*, *mōt*).  
 much, *multus*.  
 — (when nom. or acc.), *multum* with gen. See p. 22, 25.  
 must, to be translated by part. in dus.  
 myself (I), *ipse*.

## N.

nature, *nātūra*.  
 natural-to-man, *humānus*.  
 nearer, *propior*.  
 need, *egēre* (gen. or abl.).  
 neglect, *negligēre* (*neglex*, *neglect*).  
 neither, *neque* or *nec*.  
 nest, *nidus*.  
 never, *nunquam*.  
 new, *novus*.  
 night, *nox*, *noctis*, f.  
 nightingale, *luscinia*.  
 no, *nullus*.  
 — (*nihil*, nothing, followed by gen.)

nobody, } nem-o, īnis.  
no one, }  
nor, neque or nec.  
not (*in questions*), nonne ?  
not, non.  
not only—but also ; non solum—  
verum etiam.  
not yet, nondum.  
now, nunc.

## O.

oak, quercus, ūs.  
obey, parēre, dat.  
observe, scrvare : conservare.  
ocean, oceanus, i.  
offend-against, violare.  
often, s̄epe.  
old man, sen-ex, is. G. pl. um.  
old age, senect-us, ūtis, f.  
on account of, ob.  
one, unus, a, um. G. ius.  
one's, suus (*in agreement*).  
only, *see* not only.  
open, aperire (aperu, apert).  
opportunity, occasi-o, ūnis.  
orator, orāt-or, ūris.  
order, jubēre (juss, juss).  
other (the), reliquois.  
out of, extra (prep.).  
over, super (prep.).

## P.

pain, dolor, dolōr-is.  
pardon, ignoscēre (iguōv), dat.  
parent, paren-s, tis.  
part, par-s, tis, f.  
pavement, pavimentum.  
peace, pa-x, cis.  
people, popūlus.  
perceive, sentire (sens).  
persuade, persuadēre, dat. per-  
suas).  
physician, medicus.  
pity, miserēri. Gen.  
place, ponēre (posu, posit).  
plant, serēre (sēv, sät).  
Plato, Plat-o, ūnis.  
play, ludēre (lūs, lūs).  
playing, whilst they are, inter lu-  
dendum.  
pleasant, jucundus.

please, placēre (dat.).  
pleasure, volupta-s, tis.  
plough, īrare.  
plunge (into), immergere (mers,  
mers).  
poet, poēta.  
point out, monstrare.  
poor, paup-er, ūris.  
potion, poti-o, ūnis.  
power : in the — of, penes (prep.).  
praise, v. laudare.  
praise, s. lau-s, dis.  
precept, praeceptum.  
prejudicial, to be, ob-esse (dat.).  
priest, sacerdo-s, ūtis.  
prison, carc-er, ūris.  
profitable, utilis.  
procure, } parare.  
provide, }  
prudence, prudentia.  
pull down, evertere (vert, vers).

## Q.

queen, rēgina.

## R.

race, gen-us, ūris.  
raise up, excitare.  
— forces, compārare.  
rather, I had, malo.  
read, legēre (lēg, lect).  
receive, ac-cipēre (cēp, cept).  
reckon, ducēre (dux, duct).  
recollect, reminisci (gen. or acc.).  
reign, v. regnare.  
— s. regnum.  
relying on, fretus (abl.).  
remain, manēre (mans).  
remember, recordari (gen. or acc.).  
remove (intrans.), migrare.  
require, egēre (gen. or abl.).  
resist, resistēre (stit), dat.  
rest, quiescēre (quiēv, quiēt).  
retain, retinēre.  
return, redire (redeo).  
Rhine, Rhenus.  
Rhone, Rhodānus.  
rightly, recte.  
ripen, coquēre, cox, coct.  
river, flum-en, īnis : amn-is, is, m.  
road, via.  
rob, spoliare (abl.).

Roman, Romanus.

Rome, Roma.

roost (go to), cubitum (ire).

round, circum, circa.

rouse up, excitare.

rule, regere (rex, rect).

run, currere (cucurr, curs).

### S.

sacrifice, immolare.

safe, tutus.

salt water, aqua marina.

Sardes, Sardes, ium, pl.

Saturn, Saturnus.

save, servare.

say, dicere (dix, dict).

scatter, spargere (spars).

sceptre, sceptrum.

science, scientia.

sea-water, aqua marina.

see, videre (vid, vis).

seed, sem-en, ūnis.

seem, vidēri (vis).

seize, arripere, io (arripu, arrept).

sell, vendere (vendid, vendit).

send, mittere (mis, miss).

serviceable, to be, prodesse, profu,  
dat.

service, on, militiae.

shear, tondere (totond, tons).

sheep, ovis, f.

shepherd, past-or, ūris.

shore, litt-us, ūris.

short, brevis.

should, to be translated by part. in  
dus. See 186.

show, monstrare.

shrub, frutex, frutic-is, f.

shut, claudere (claus).

side, on this, cis (prep.).

— latus, later-is, n.

silver, argentum.

simple, simpl-ex, ūcis.

sin, peccare.

sing, cantare: canere (cēčin, cant).

sharpen, acuere (acu, acūt).

skilful, peritus, gen.

slave, servus, i.

— : to be the — of, servire, dat.

slay, occidere (occid, occis).

sleep, dormire.

slip away, elabi, elapsus.

sloth, ignavia.

slothful, ignavus.

slow, tardus.

small, parvus.

snake, angu-is, is, m.

snatch, ar-ripere, io (ripu, rept).

snow, ni-x, vis.

Socrates, Socrāt-es, is.

some, aliquid with gen.

— alquis : pl. nonnulli.

— time or other, aliquando.

something, aliquid.

son, filius, i. V. fili.

soon, cito.

sorrow, dol-or, ūris.

sound, sonus, i.

sow, serere (sēv, sät).

space-of-two-years, biennium.

— three-years, triennium.

spare, parcere (peperc), dat.

speak, loqui, locutus.

spend time, impendere, dat.

spring, ver, veris, n.

sprinkle, adspergere, adspers.

stability, stabilita-s, tis.

stand, stāre (stēt).

star, stella.

state, civita-s, tis.

strength, vir-es, ium, pl., robur,  
ōris.

succour, succurrere, dat.

sum-of-money, pecunia.

summer, aesta-s, tis.

sun, sol, solis, m.

superfluous, supervacuus.

surround, cingere (cinx, cinct).

swear, jurare.

sweet, dulcis.

swift, vel-ox, ūcis.

swim, natare.

### T.

tame, domare (domu, domit).

teach, dōcēre.

tear to pieces, dilaniare.

temple, templum.

than, quam.

theft, furtum.

their, suus (*if it relates to nom. of  
sentence : if not, eorum*),

there, ibi.

think little of, parvi aestimare.  
threaten, minari, acc. of thing; d.  
of pers.  
three, tres, tria, &c.  
time, temp-us, óris.  
timid, timidus.  
top of, summus (in agreement. See  
144).  
through, per (prep.), acc.  
towards, { erga; sometimes adver-  
sus.  
in (with acc.).  
treachery, prodi-ti-o, ónis.  
tree, arb-or, óris, f.  
true, verus.  
truth, verum, neut. adj.  
twice, bis.

## U.

empire, arbiter (arbitr-i).  
uncertain, incertus.  
uncover, aperire (aperu, apert).  
understand, intelligere (lex, lect).  
undertake, sus-cipere, -io (cēp,  
cept).  
unlearned, indoctus.  
unnecessary, supervacuus.  
unprofitable, inutilis (dat. of ge-  
rund).  
unworthy, indignus (abl.).  
unwilling, invitūs.  
—ly, invitūs. See 57.  
upright, honestus.  
use, uti, usus, abl.  
useful, utilis.  
useless, inutilis.

## V.

value, aestimare.  
— more highly, pluris facere.  
vapour, vap-or, óris.  
verse, versus, ús.  
very great, maximus.  
— highly, maxi-mi (gen.).  
— many, plurimi, se, a.  
— fond, studiōsus (gen.)  
— sign of superlative.  
vice, vitium.  
victim, victim-a.

victory, victoria.  
virtue, virtū-s, tis.  
virtuous, honestus.  
voice, vox, vōcis.

## W.

wage, gerēre (gess, gest).  
walk, ambulare.  
wall, murus, i.  
want, carēre, abl.  
war, bellum.  
wasp, vespa.  
water, aqua.  
way, via.  
wealth, op-es, um.  
well, recte (= rightly).  
white, candidus.  
wholesome, salüber, salubris, sa-  
lubre (salüber only for nom.  
masc.).  
wicked, imprōbus.  
—ness, malitia.  
wine, vinum.  
wing, penna.  
winter, hiem-s, is.  
wise, sapien-s, tis.  
wisdom, sapientia.  
with, cum (prep.).  
— me (after to sup, dine, &c.),  
apud me.  
within, intra (prep.).  
without (= on the outside of),  
extra (prep.).  
— to be, carēre, abl.  
wolf, lūpus, i.  
word, verbum.  
— (when it means promise),  
fides, ei.

worse, pejor.  
worst, pessimus.  
worthy, dignus, abl.  
write, scribēre (scrips, script).  
wrong, violare.

## Y.

year, annus.  
you yourself, ipse.  
young (bird), pullus.

## INDEX II.

## LATIN.

- To find the root of the present from the root of the *perfect*, we must remember how the root of the perfect was formed.
- a) Thus if *āv*, *īv*, *ū* precede 'it' or any other termination of the tenses that have the root of the *perfect*, we get the root of the present by throwing them away. But sometimes *ū* is to be retained.
- b) We must remember that *x* is made up of *cs*, or *gs*, or *qus*: and therefore the root of the present ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu*: sometimes, however, in *v*, *h*, or the vowel that precedes *x*.
- [*duxi, texi, coxi*, from *duco, tego, coquo,*  
*tici, vixi, struxi*, from *tico, vego, struo.*]
- c) We must remember that *ps* may be made up of *bs*: so that the root of the present may end in *b*; not necessarily in *p*.  
 (scrips-it = scrib-sit : R. scrib.)
- d) Sometimes an *n* or *m* must be inserted before the final mute, to give the root of the present.  
 (vic-it : R. vinc : rūp-it ; R. rump.)
- e) Sometimes *ā* must be turned into *ā*, to get the root of the present.  
 (jēc-it : R. jāc.)
- f) Before *s*, a *d* has often been thrown away.  
 (clausi = claud-si ; R. claud.)
- g) An *s* before *s* is a *b*, *d*, or *r* in the present.  
 (jussi, cessi, gessi, from jub eo, ced o, ger o.)
- [~~scr~~ When a verb is followed by *io*, the meaning is that the first person of the pres. ends in *io*.]

A, ab, abs, *from, by.*  
 abire, *to go away* (*from ab eo*<sup>1</sup>).  
 absolvēre (*absolv*, *absolut*), *to ac-*  
*quit.*  
 ab-sumere, *to take away, destroy.*  
 ac, *and.*  
 accidere (*cid*), *to happen.*  
 accusare, *to accuse.*  
 acuēre, *to sharpen.*  
 ad, *to.*  
 adeo, *so.*  
 ad-esse, *to be present, or at hand.*  
 ad-ferre (*fero*, *irreg. verb*), *to*  
*bring.*

adluc, *hitherto, yet.*  
 adipisci (*adept*), *to gain, to win.*  
 ad-jūvare (*adjūv*, *adjūt*), *to help.*  
 ad-monēre (*monu*, *monit*), *to ad-*  
*monish, remind.*  
 ad-ōlescere, *to grow up, to grow.*  
 adspectus, *ūs, look, appearance.*  
 adspicēre, *io* (*spex*, *spect*), *to be-*  
*hold.*  
 adulator, *a flatterer.*  
 advect-, *see* advehere.  
 ad-vehēre (*vex*, *vect*), *to bring.*  
 adversus, *towards.*  
 sedificare, *to build.*

<sup>1</sup> See conjug. of *eo*, infin. *īre*, note k, p. 53, and Irreg. Verbs.

segrotus, sick.	arb-or, ῥis, f. tree.
sequalis (adj.), of the same age.	argentum, silver.
sequitas, equity; justice.	Aristides, a noble Athenian, famed for his justice.
estimare, to value.	arma (pl.), arms.
testa-s, tis, summer.	arripere, io (arripu, arrept), to seize upon; snatch.
teta-s, atis, time of life; age; life.	ar-s, tis, art.
afficere (af-ficio): pœnâ afficere, to visit with punishment.	ascendere, to ascend; climb.
affirmare, to affirm.	asinus, i, ass.
ag-er, ri, field; territory.	Athēnæ, Athens.
agere, to do (ēg, act).	Atheniensis, an Athenian.
agricōla, husbandman.	auctoritas, authority; influence.
alere (alu, alt), to nourish; support.	auctumnus, i, autumn.
aliquando, some time or other	audacia, boldness.
aliquis (see Pronouns), some; some one.	audax, audācis, bold; overbold.
aliquid (neut.), something; some. Before a genitive it is to be translated by some, and the genitive not to have 'of.'	audēre, to dare (ausus sum).
alius, a, ud (G. ius), other, another.	audire, to hear.
Alpes, G. ium, the Alps.	augēre (aux, auct), increase.
alterūter, the one or the other; one of the two.	aureus, adj. of gold.
amare, to love.	aurum, gold.
amārus, bitter.	auxilium, help, aid.
ambītus, ūs, bribery.	avaritia, avarice.
ambūlare, to walk.	avārus, greedy; avaricious.
amicitia, friendship.	avis, bird.
amicus, i, friend.	B.
amittēre (amis, amiss), to lose.	barbārus, barbarous.
amor, love.	beate, happily.
amphibium, an amphibious animal.	beatus, happy.
anas, ātis, duck.	bellua, beast.
anguis, a snake.	bellum, war.
animal, G. alis, an animal.	bene, well.
anīmus, i, the mind.	beneficium, benefit.
annus, year.	beneficūs, beneficent; bountiful.
ante, { (prep.)	bestia, a beast.
antea, } before { (adv.)	bibēre (bib, bībīt), to drink
antequam, } (conjunct.)	biennium, the space of two years; two years.
ante-fēro, I prefer.	bis, twice.
antrum, cave.	bonitas, goodness.
anus, old woman.	bonus, good.
aperire, (aperu, apert), to open; uncover.	brachium, arm.
Apoll-o, G. īnis, Apollo.	brevis, short.
apud, at; amongst.	brutus, a, um, brute.
aqua, water.	C.
— marina, sea-water; salt water.	cæcus, blind.
ara, altar.	cædēre (cecid, cæs), to slay.
arare, to plough.	calidior, warmer.
	calor, heat.

candidus, white.	cogitare, to consider.
canēre (cecīn, cant), to sing.	cognitio, knowledge.
can-is, G. is, dog.	cognitus, known.
cantare, to sing.	colēre (colu, cul), to cultivate.
cantus, ūs, the singing.	collineare, to hit the mark.
capēre, capio (cēp, capt), to take ; to seize.	col-or, ūris, colour.
capītis (of the head =), to death.	committere (commīs, commiss), to entrust.
capra, she-goat.	commōdum, advantage.
cap-ut, ūtis, head.	commorari, to delay ; to remain.
carc-er, ūris, prison.	comparare, to raise (forces).
carēre, to be without (abl.) ; to do without.	compellare, to call.
carpēre, to pluck ; card ; carp at. Carthāg-o, ūnis, Carthage.	complēre (plēv, plēt), to fill.
castigare, to chastise.	comprehendere (prehend, pre- hens), to seize.
castra (pl.), a camp.	concio, onis, f. assembly.
casu, by chance.	concordia, concord.
casus, ūs, accident.	condēre (condid, condit), to build ; found.
catus, cub, puppy.	confēro *, carry (together) ; con- fēro culpam, I throw the blame.
cave (imperat. of caveo), take care.	conferre se, to betake themselves.
celeriter, quickly.	confidere, to feel confident.
celsus, high, tall.	con-fitēri (fess), to confess.
cēp, see capere.	confusus (partic. of confundere), confused.
cera, wax.	conservare, to observe (duties).
certamen, contest.	consilium, intention, design.
certus, certain ; sure.	consolatio, consolation.
cervus, stag.	conspectus, ūs, sight.
christiānus, christian :—a christian.	constat, it is an allowed fact ; is known.
cibus, i, food.	con-stituere (stitu, stitūt), to settle.
cingēre (cinx, cinet), to surround.	construēre (strux, struct), con- struct, build (a nest).
circa, } about.	consuetud-o, ūnis, custom.
circum, } about.	consulatus, consulship.
circum-linere (lev, līt), to smear round ; anoint ; cover.	consulēre (sulu, sult), to consult.
circum-spicēre, circum-spicio (spex, spect), to look around.	contect-, see contegere.
cis, } on this side of	contegere (tex, tect), to cover.
citra, } cito, quickly.	con-temnēre (tempis, tempt), to despise.
civ-is, G. is, citizen.	contemplari, to look at.
civīt-as, ūtis, city ; state.	contentus, contented (abl.).
clam, without the knowledge of (prep.).	contra, against.
clamare, to cry out.	coquēre (cox, coct), to cook ; bake ; ripen.
claudēre (claus), to shut.	copiae, forces.
coact-, see cogere.	cor, cordis, heart.
cœlum, heaven ; the sky.	
cœna, dinner.	
cōgere (coeg, coact), to compel.	

\* See fero, irreg. verb.

coram, before.  
 Corinthus, Corinth.  
 cornu, n. horn.  
 corōna, crown; garland.  
 corp-us, ōris, body.  
 cor-rigēre, to correct.  
 cor-rumpēre, to corrupt.  
 cort-ex, ūcis, bark.  
 crabro, hornet.  
 crastinus, a, um, to-morrow's ;  
     crastinus dies, to-morrow.  
 credēre (credid, credit), to believe.  
 cremare, to burn.  
 crescere (crev, cret), to grow.  
 eublūtum, to bed; to roost.  
 culpa, fault.  
 cultor, ōris, a cultivator.  
 cunctatio, delay.  
 cuncti, all.  
 cunctus (with subj.), the whole.  
 cupiditas, ātis, desire.  
 cupidus, desirous.  
 cupēre, cupio (cupīv, cupit), to de-  
     sire; wish.  
 curare, to take care.  
 currēre (cucurr, curs), to run.  
 currus, ūs, a chariot.

## D.

damnare, to condemn.  
 dare (dēd, dät), to give.  
 de, from; concerning.  
 debēre, to owe.  
 decerpēre (cerps, cert), to pluck.  
 decidēre, to fall off.  
 decipēre, io (cēp, cept), to deceive.  
 declarare, to declare.  
 de-esse, to be wanting.  
 degere, to live.  
 deglūb-ere (glups, glupt), to slay.  
 deleo (delēv, delēt), to destroy.  
 delinquēre, to transgress.  
 delirius, crazy.  
 deme-n-s, ntis, mad.  
 descendēre, to come down.  
 detegēre (tex, tect), to discover.  
 de-terrēre, to deter.  
 Deus, God.  
 de-vincere (vīc, viet), to conquer.

dicēre (dix, dict), to say; speak \*.  
 dictator, dictator (a high office at  
     Rome).  
 dies, ei, day.  
 difficilis, difficult.  
 diffidere, distrust (dat.).  
 dignus, worthy (abl.).  
 dilaniare, to tear to pieces.  
 discere (didic), to learn.  
 disciplina, discipline; teaching.  
 discrépare, to be different.  
 dis-jungere (junx, junct), to sepa-  
     rate.  
 displícēre, to displease (dat.).  
 dis-ponere (posu, posit), to ar-  
     range.  
 diu, long; for a long time.  
 diutius, longer.  
 dividere (vis, vis), to divide.  
 divinitas, divinity; divine origin.  
 divinus, divine.  
 divitiae, arum, riches.  
 dōcēre, to teach.  
 dol-or, oris, pain; grief.  
 domare (domu, domit), to tame;  
     master.  
 domi, at home.  
 domiñus, i, master.  
 domo, from home.  
 domum, home (acc.).  
 domus, house.  
 donare, to bestow.  
 donum, gift.  
 dormire, to sleep.  
 dubitare, to doubt.  
 ducēre (dux, duct), to lead; reckon.  
 dulcis, sweet.  
 duo, two.  
 duodēcim, twelve.  
 durare, to last.

## E.

e, ex, of; from; out of.  
 e-i; e-o, &c. See is, ea, id, p. 121.  
 ēdēre (ēd, ēs), to eat.  
 edicere (dix, dict), to make a pro-  
     clamation.  
 effect-, supine root of efficere, to  
     make.  
 efficax, effectual.

\* This word drops e from the imperative: dice (dic).

effugēre, *escape, avoid.*  
 ēg. See agēre.  
 egēre (gen. or abl.), *need.*  
 egressus, partic. of egrēdi, *to go out.*  
 e-labi (laps), *to slip away.*  
 elegantia, *elegance.*  
 ceph-as, antis, *elephant.*  
 eligēre, *to choose.*  
 ēmēre (ēm, emt or empt), *to buy.*  
 enīti, *to strive.*  
 ensis, is, *sword.*  
 Epaminondas, a *Theban general.*  
 epistōla, a *letter.*  
 eques, equitis, *horseman.*  
 equus, i, *horse.*  
 erectus, *raised up; erect.*  
 erga, *towards.*  
 eripēre, (eripio, ui), *to snatch out.*  
 erumpēre (erup, erupt), *to break out.*  
 esto, imperat. of esse, p. 120.  
 esurire, *to be hungry.*  
 et, and; both; even.  
 etiam, even; also.  
 etiam atque etiam, *again and again.*  
 eventus, partic. of evehere, *to raise.*  
 evertēre (vert, vers), *to overthrow, pull down.*  
 evōlare, *to fly out of.*  
 ex, out of; from (with ablative).  
 excellere, *excel.*  
 excitare, *rouse up; awaken.*  
 excruciare, *to torment.*  
 exercēre, to *exercise; practise.*  
 exercitus, ūs, *army.*  
 exiguum, *small.*  
 ex-ire (ex-eo \*), *to go out.*  
 existimare, *to think.*  
 expellēre (pul, puls), *to drive out; banish.*  
 exspectare, *to expect; wait for.*  
 expirare, *to expire.*  
 externus, *external.*  
 extimescēre, *to dread.*  
 extra, *without.*

## F.

fabulosus, *fabulous.*

facēre, is (fēc, fact), *to do; to make;* imperat. fac †.  
 facies, ei, *face.*  
 facilis, *easy:* facile, *easily.*  
 fallēre (fēfell), *to deceive; break (one's word, &c.).*  
 fam-es, G. is, *hunger; famine.*  
 familiaritas, ātis, *intimacy.*  
 fatēri, (fassus), *to confess, own.*  
 fatigare, *to fatigue.*  
 fāvēre (fāv, faut), *to favour (dat.).*  
 febris (abl. i), *fever.*  
 fec-, see facere.  
 felicitas, ātis, *happiness.* •  
 fel-ix, īcis, *happy.*  
 fidelis, *faithful.*  
 fid-es, īi, *faith; fidelity; one's word.*  
 fere, nearly, almost: nemo fere, hardly any body.  
 fero. See ferre.  
 ferox, *savage.*  
 ferre (see irreg. verb, p. 123), *to bear.*  
 figūra, *figure.*  
 filia, te, *daughter.*  
 filius, i, *son.* Voc. fili.  
 finire, *to finish.*  
 firmus, *firm.*  
 fit, becomes: from fio, p. 123.  
 flagitare, *to demand: to call for (with importunity).*  
 flagitium, *crime.*  
 flo-s, ris, *flower.*  
 florēre, *to bloom; to flourish.*  
 flum-en, īnis, *river.*  
 folium, *leaf.*  
 fon-s, ntis, m. *fountain.*  
 fore, from esse.  
 forma, *shape.*  
 formica, *an ant.*  
 fortiter, *courageously.*  
 fovēre (fov, fōt), *to cherish.*  
 frangēre (frēg, fräct), *to break.*  
 frater, tris, *brother.*  
 fratricida, *a fratricide.*  
 fraudare, *to defraud.*  
 fretus, *relying on, abl.*  
 frigidus, adj. *cold.*  
 frig-us, īris, *cold.*  
 fructus, ūs, *fruit.*

\* See eo, irreg. verb.

† Fao for facē.

frui, to *enjoy*, abl.  
frumentum, *corn*.  
frut-ex, icis, *shrub*.  
fundus, i, *estate; farm*.  
fungi (*functus*), to *discharge*, abl.  
furére, to be mad.  
furtum, *theft*.  
futurus, about to be (partic. of  
esse); *future*.

## G.

gallina, *hen*.  
Gal'us, a *Gaul*.  
garrus, *talkative; chattering*.  
gen-us, éris, *race, kind*.  
gerére (gess, gest), to *carry on; wage*.  
gloria, *glory*.  
grandinare, to *hail*.  
grandis, *large*.  
granum, a *grain*.  
gratia, *favour, kindness, gratitude*.  
gratus, *agreeable*.  
gravis, *heavy*.  
grex, grëgis (m.), *flock*.  
gru-s, is, *crane*.

## H.

habere, to have \*.  
haberi, to be considered.  
habitare, to dwell; live.  
haurire, to swallow.  
herba, *herb*.  
hiem-s, is, *winter*.  
hinc, *hence*.  
homo, inis, *man*.  
honeste, *virtuously*.  
honestus, *honorable; virtuous*.  
honor, óris, *honour*.  
hortari, to *exhort*.  
hortus, i, *garden*.  
hostis, *enemy*.  
humanus, *natural to man; human*.  
humi, on the ground.

## I.

ibi, *there*.  
idem, eadem, idem, the same,  
p. 121.  
idoneus, fit for (dat.).

ignarus, ignorant (gen.).  
ignavus, *lazy; sluggish*.  
ignis, is, m. *fire*.  
ignoratio, *ignorance*.  
ignoscere (nov), to *pardon*.  
illustrare, to *illumine*.  
imbecillus, *weak*.  
immensus, *immense*.  
immergere (mers), to *plunge in*.  
immnere, to *hang over; impend*,  
dat.  
immobilis, *immovable*.  
immolare, to *sacrifice*.  
immortalis, *immortal*.  
impar, áris, odd (of numbers).  
impeditre, to *hinder*.  
impellere (pul, puls), to *impel*.  
impendere (pend, pens), to *spend*.  
imperare, to *command* (dat.).  
imperium, *command; power*.  
impetrare, to *gain a request*.  
impius, *impious*.  
impléitus, filled (partic. of *implere*).  
impróbus, *wicked*.  
in, into; in, &c.  
incendium, *conflagration, fire*.  
inceptum, *an undertaking*.  
incertus, *uncertain*.  
incidere, to fall into; enter.  
in-cognitus, *unknown*.  
in-cultus, *un-cultivated*.  
indignus, *unworthy* (abl.).  
indoctus, *unlearned*.  
indulgere (duls, dult), to *indulge*,  
dat.  
industria, *industry*.  
infelix, icis, *unfortunate*.  
infestus, *hostile*.  
infirmissimus, very weak, superl.  
of *infirmus*.  
ingenium, *abilities; mind*.  
ingen-s, tis, *huge*.  
inhibere, to *restrain*.  
inhonestus, *dishonourable*.  
iniquus, *unjust*.  
injuria, *injury*.  
innoxius, *harmless*.  
inopia, *want, destitution*.  
inspirare, to *breathe into*.  
instituere, to *appoint; constitute*.

\* Also 'to take' (one thing for another).

<i>intē-ger, gra, grum, whole.</i>	<i>laudare, to praise.</i>	
<i>intelligēre (lex, lect), to understand.</i>	<i>lectio, reading.</i>	
<i>inter, between ; amongst.</i>	<i>legatus, an ambassador ; a lieutenant.</i>	
<i>interdum, sometimes.</i>	<i>lēgēre (lēg, lect), to read.</i>	
<i>interesse, to be engaged in.</i>	<i>legio, a legion.</i>	
<i>interfu- (see inter-esse).</i>	<i>levia, light.</i>	
<i>interrogare, to ask.</i>	<i>lex, lēgis, law.</i>	
<i>intervalum, interval.</i>	<i>liber, era, erum, free.</i>	
<i>intra, within.</i>	<i>liber-er, -ri, book.</i>	
<i>intuēri, to behold, see.</i>	<i>liberalita-s, ātis, liberality.</i>	
<i>inutilis, useless ; unfit for.</i>	<i>liberare, to set free.</i>	
<i>invēnire (vēn, vent), to find ; invent.</i>	<i>licet, it is allowed (I, you, &amp;c.), may.</i>	
<i>invīdēre (vid, vis), to envy, dat.</i>	<i>ligneus, wooden.</i>	
<i>invītus, unwilling. To be construed unwillingly.</i>	<i>liquescēre (licu), to melt.</i>	
<i>ipse, a, um, G. ius, self, myself, thyself, itself, &amp;c.</i>	<i>litēræ, pl. a letter ; literature.</i>	
<i>ira, anger.</i>	<i>lit-us, ūris, shore.</i>	
<i>irasci (iratus), to be angry.</i>	<i>locūples, ētis, rich.</i>	
<i>irritare, to irritate.</i>	<i>locus (pl. loci and loca), place.</i>	
<i>is, ea, id. See Pronouns, p. 121.</i>	<i>longus, long.</i>	
<i>Ist-er, ri, the Danube.</i>	<i>loqui (locutus), to speak.</i>	
<i>it-er, inēris, journey.</i>	<i>lubid-o, ūnis, lust.</i>	
<i>ita, thus ; so.</i>	<i>ludēre (lūs), to play.</i>	
J.		
<i>jacēre (jēc, jact), to throw, hurl.</i>	<i>luna, the moon.</i>	
<i>jaculari, to hurl a dart, shoot.</i>	<i>lupus, i, wolf.</i>	
<i>jam, now, already.</i>	<i>luscinia, nightingale.</i>	
<i>jubēre (juss), to bid, command.</i>	<i>lux, lucis, light.</i>	
<i>jucunditas, pleasantness, pleasure.</i>	M.	
<i>jucundus, pleasant.</i>	<i>magist-er, ri, master.</i>	
<i>jud-ex, ūcis, judge.</i>	<i>māistratus, ūs, magistrate.</i>	
<i>judicāre, to judge.</i>	<i>magni, at a great (price).</i>	
<i>Jupiter, G. Jovis, &amp;c., Jupiter,</i> <i>p. 124.</i>	<i>magnitud-o, inis, magnitude, size.</i>	
<i>jurare, to swear.</i>	<i>magnopere, earnestly.</i>	
<i>jussum, a command.</i>	<i>magnus, great. With 'voice' loud.</i>	
<i>justus, just.</i>	<i>manus, ūs, hand, f. Also band or</i> <i>body of soldiers.</i>	
<i>juvēnis, young man.</i>	<i>major, greater.</i>	
<i>juxta, close by (prep.).</i>	<i>malitia, wickedness.</i>	
L.		
<i>lacea-ēre (iv, it), to provoke.</i>	<i>malum (neut.), evil ; an evil.</i>	
<i>lab-or, ūris, labour.</i>	<i>malus, bad.</i>	
<i>labōrare, to labour ; to be in trouble.</i>	<i>mare, is, n. sea.</i>	
<i>lædere (læs), to hurt (acc.).</i>	<i>marīna (aqua), salt (water)*.</i>	
<i>lana, wool.</i>	<i>Massilia, Marseilles.</i>	
<i>lat-us, ūris, side.</i>	<i>mater, matris, mother.</i>	

\* Properly sea-water.

mediocritas, <i>a middle point; the mean.</i>	murus, <i>i., wall.</i> mutare, <i>to change.</i>
medius, <i>middle</i> ( <i>construed ‘the middle or midst,’ and ‘of’ put before its substantive</i> ).	N.
mel, mellis (n.), <i>honey.</i>	natare, <i>to swim.</i>
memoria, <i>memory, recollection.</i>	natura, <i>nature.</i>
mendacium, <i>a lie.</i>	natus, <i>born.</i> Part. from <i>nascor.</i>
men-s, ntis, f. <i>mind.</i>	navigatio, <i>navigatio.</i>
metuēre, <i>to fear.</i>	nav-is, G. <i>is, ship.</i>
metus, tis, <i>fear.</i>	ne—quidem ( <i>with a word between</i> ), <i>not even.</i>
meus, a, um, <i>mine; my.</i> Voc. m. mi.	nē, <i>at the end of a word, is not to be translated*</i> , but the sentence is to be translated as a question.
migrare, <i>to remove</i> ( <i>intrans.</i> )	nec, } nor; and not.
miles (G. militis), <i>soldier.</i>	neque, } negare, <i>to deny.</i>
militiae, <i>on service, in the field.</i>	negligēre ( <i>neglex, neglect</i> ), <i>neglect, disregard.</i>
minari, <i>to threaten.</i>	nem-o, īnis, <i>nobody.</i>
minor, <i>less.</i>	nequire ( <i>nequeo, like eo</i> ), <i>cannot.</i>
miser, era, erum, <i>miserable.</i>	ne-scire, <i>not to know.</i>
miserēri, <i>to pity</i> (gen.).	nex, necis, <i>death, murder.</i>
miseria, <i>misery.</i>	nidus, <i>i., nest.</i>
mittēre (mīs, miss), <i>to send.</i>	nihil, <i>nothing</i> †: to be construed 'no,' when followed by gen. See p. 22, 56.
mōbilis, <i>moveable.</i>	nihilī, <i>at nothing.</i>
modus, <i>manner, means.</i>	nimis, <i>too.</i>
moerēre, <i>to mourn.</i>	nimius, <i>too much.</i>
mollis, <i>soft.</i>	nix, nivis, <i>snow.</i>
mōrōd-. See mōrdēre.	nobilis, <i>noble; of rank.</i>
monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	nobilitare, <i>to ennable, to make renowned.</i>
monocēr-os, ḍōtis, <i>a unicorn.</i>	nocēre, <i>to hurt</i> (dat.).
mon-s, tis, m. <i>a mountain.</i>	non, <i>not.</i>
monstrare, <i>to show.</i>	nondum, <i>not yet.</i>
mōrdēre (mōrōd, mōrs), <i>to bite.</i>	nonnē, <i>not?</i> The auxiliary verb must be placed before the not.
mōres, pl. <i>character; morals.</i>	nonnulli, <i>some.</i>
mōri, ior (mortuus), <i>to die.</i>	novus, <i>new.</i>
morosus, <i>ill-humoured.</i>	nubēre (nups, nupt), <i>to marry</i> (dat.).
mor-s, tis, <i>death.</i>	nub-es, <i>is, cloud.</i>
mortalis, <i>mortal.</i>	nullus, a, um, G. ius, <i>none; no.</i>
mōrt-i-fēr (a, um), <i>fatal.</i>	num, <i>not to be translated when it is the first word. If not, whether.</i>
mōrtuus, <i>dead.</i> (See mori.)	numerare, <i>to number, count.</i>
mōvēre (mōv, mōt), <i>to move</i> (trans.); mōvēri, <i>to move</i> (intrans.).	numerus, <i>number.</i>
mōlētare, <i>to fine</i> (abl.).	
mōlier, ēris, <i>woman.</i>	
mōlitud-o, īnis, <i>multitude.</i>	
mōltus, <i>many, much.</i>	
mōndus, <i>world.</i>	
mōnire, <i>to fortify, to protect.</i>	

\* Except in dependent questions: but where these occur, the necessary explanation is given. See 319, b.

† It is sometimes by ‘not,’ with *at all.*

nuntiare, to announce.  
nunquam, never.

## O.

ob, on account of.  
ob oculos, before our eyes.  
obducere (dux, duct), overlay ;  
cover.  
obedire, to obey (dat.).  
ob-esse, to be prejudicial to (dat.).  
oblivisci (oblitus), to forget (gen.).  
obscure, obscurely.  
ob-sistere, to withstand, prevent.  
ob-stare (with dat.), to hinder.  
obtinere, to obtain.  
occasi-o, ònis, opportunity.  
occidere (cid, cis), to kill ; slay.  
ocùlus, i, eye.  
odium, hatred.  
odoratus, ùs, smell, scent.  
offendere (di, sum), to offend.  
of-féro (see irreg. verb fero, p.  
123), to offer.  
officium, duty.  
olorinus, adj. of the swan.  
omnis, all.  
operire, to cover.  
opes, G. um, resources ; wealth.  
oppugnare, to attack.  
ops, opis, f. power, assistance.  
optimus, superl. of bonus, good.  
orare, to pray.  
oratio, ònis, speech.  
orator, òris, orator.  
ostia, pl. mouth (of a river).  
ovis, sheep.

## P.

pabulatum, to forage (supine).  
pallium, a cloak.  
palpèbrae, the eyelids.  
par, equal ; even (opp. to odd).  
parare, to prepare ; to provide.  
parcere (pepercere), to spare (dat.).  
parens, ntis, parent.  
parère, to obey (dat.).  
parère (pario), to bring forth.  
par-s, tis, part.  
parsimonia, frugality.  
parvi (gen.), at a little.

parvum (neut. adj.), little.  
parvus, little, small.  
pastor, shepherd.  
pate-fieri (see fio, irreg. verb, p.  
123), to be laid bare ; to be  
discovered.  
pat-er, G. ris, father.  
patientia, patience.  
patria, country.  
patrius, paternal, fatherly.  
pauper, G. is, poor.  
paupert-as, atis, poverty.  
pavimentum, pavement.  
pavor, fear, dread.  
pax, G. pacis, peace.  
peccare, to sin.  
peccatum, a sin.  
pecunia, money.  
pecus, òris (any small tame  
animal), sheep.  
penes, in the power of (prep.).  
penna, feather.  
pepèrc, see parcere.  
per, through.  
perfidia, perfidy.  
peregrinari, to go abroad : aves pe-  
regrinantes, migratory birds ;  
birds of passage.  
perficere, perficio, to accomplish.  
periculösus, dangerous.  
periculum, danger.  
perinde, just so ; perinde est ac si,  
it is just as if.  
peritus, skilful ; skilled in (gen.).  
Persæ, arum, the Persians.  
per-solvere (solv, solut), to pay :  
per-solvere poenas, to suffer  
punishment \*.  
persuadere (suas), to persuade  
(dat.).  
permanere (mans, mans), to re-  
main.  
permotus, part. pass. of permou-  
vere, to move.  
perniciosus, hurtful.  
perpessus, partic. of perpèti, to  
suffer.  
perpetuo, for ever.  
perpetuus, perpetual ; in per-  
petuum, for ever.

\* Properly to pay penalties.

perturbatio, <i>perturbation</i> .	pro, <i>for</i> ; <i>suitable to</i> .
pervenire, <i>to arrive</i> .	prod-esse ( <i>profu</i> ), <i>to profit</i> ; <i>to do good to</i> .
petere (petiv, petit), <i>to seek</i> ; <i>make for</i> .	proditi-o, ônis, <i>treachery</i> .
philosophia, <i>philosophy</i> .	præcium, <i>battle</i> .
piet-as, átis, <i>dutiful affection</i> .	profectus, part. of proficiisci, <i>to set out</i> .
pingere (pinx, pict), <i>to paint</i> .	profu-, see prodesse.
pisc-is, G. <i>is</i> , <i>fish</i> .	prohibere, <i>to prevent, hinder</i> .
pius, <i>pious</i> .	proles, <i>offspring, young</i> .
placare, <i>to appease</i> .	propensus, <i>inclined</i> .
placere (placu, placit), <i>to please</i> (dat.).	propior, <i>nearer</i> .
planta, <i>plant</i> .	propter, <i>on account of</i> .
Plat-o, ônis, <i>Plato</i> (a Grecian philosopher).	providentia, <i>providence</i> .
plerique, pleræque, pleraque, <i>most</i> .	prudentius, <i>circumspect, wise</i> .
plerumque, <i>generally</i> .	prudentia, <i>prudence; practical wisdom</i> .
plurimi, <i>very many</i> ; <i>most</i> .	pudor, ôris, <i>shame, bashfulness</i> .
plus, G. pluris. Pl. es, -a, G. -ium, &c., <i>more</i> .	puella, <i>girl</i> .
pœna, <i>punishment</i> .	puer, G. pueri, <i>boy</i> .
poëta, <i>poet</i> .	pugna, <i>battle</i> .
pomum, <i>apple</i> .	pugnare, <i>to fight</i> .
ponere (posu, posit), <i>to place</i> .	pullus, <i>young (of a bird)</i> .
pon-s, tis, m. <i>bridge</i> .	pulvis, G. ēris, <i>dust</i> .
popularis, <i>popular</i> .	putare, <i>to think</i> .
populus, i, <i>people</i> .	Q.
porta, <i>gate</i> .	qua-dam, abl. fem. of qui-dam.
posit-, see ponere.	quadraginta, <i>forty</i> .
posse, <i>to be able</i> ; <i>can</i> , p. 123.	quærere, <i>to seek, enquire</i> .
post, <i>after</i> ; acc.	quæstio, <i>question</i> .
post, adv. <i>afterwards</i> .	qualis, <i>of what kind?</i>
poten-s, tis, <i>powerful</i> .	quam, <i>than</i> . <i>Before adj. how</i> .
potio, <i>drink, draught</i> .	— plurimi, <i>as many as possible</i> .
potiri, ior, <i>to get possession of</i> .	— maximus, <i>as great as possible</i> .
præ, in <i>comparison of</i> (prep.).	quando, <i>when</i> .
præceptum, <i>precept</i> .	quantum, <i>how much</i> .
præditus, <i>endued with</i> .	quantus, <i>how great</i> .
præsen-s, tis, <i>present</i> .	quare, <i>why?</i>
præstan-s, G. tis, <i>excellent</i> .	quartus, <i>fourth</i> .
præstat, <i>it is better</i> .	querqus, ūs, <i>oak</i> .
præter, <i>besides, except; beyond</i> .	qui, quæ, quod, <i>who; which; that</i> .
præteritus, <i>past</i> .	quia, <i>because</i> .
pratum, <i>meadow</i> .	quicquid (neut. of quis-quis), <i>whatever</i> .
premère ( <i>press</i> ), <i>to press</i> .	quid (neut. of quis), <i>why?</i>
pretiosus, <i>valuable</i> .	quidam *, <i>a certain; some</i> .
primus, <i>first</i> .	quidem, <i>indeed; (after nē) even</i> , the nē being translated not.
principatus, ūs, <i>the first place</i> .	
privare, <i>to deprive</i> .	
privatus, <i>private</i> .	

\* Declined like *qui* with *dam* added.

quiescere (quiev), *to rest, keep quiet.*  
 quis, *who?* quid? *what?*  
 quis (indefinite), *any.*  
 quisquam, *any body.*  
 quisque, *each; every body.*  
 quo, *that* (putting ‘*the*’ before the comparative): *whither.*  
 quod, neut. of *qui.*  
 quod, adv. *because.*  
 quotidie, *daily; every day.*  
 quum, *when;* if followed by *tum,* *both;* *tum* being *and.*

## R.

raro, *seldom.*  
 ratio, onis, *reason, an account.*  
 recordari, *to remember* (gen.).  
 recipere (recipio), *to receive.*  
 recte, *rightly; well.*  
 rectus, *right.*  
 recusare, *to refuse.*  
 reddere (reddid, reddit), *to return:* red. rationem, *to give an account.*  
 redire (red-eo), *to return:* eo, p. 123.  
 re-ferre, fero (irreg. verb): re-ferre gratiam, *to show kindness in return.*  
 re-ficere (to make again), io, *to refresh.*  
 refugere (fug, fugit), io, *to flee back.*  
 regere (rex, rect), *to rule.*  
 regina, *queen.*  
 regio, onis, f. *district, country.*  
 regnare, *to reign.*  
 regnum, *kingdom.*  
 reliquus, *remaining; the other.*  
 reminisci, *to recollect, gen. or acc.*  
 repente, *suddenly.*  
 reperire, *to find.*  
 res, ei, *thing, affair.*  
 resistere (restit), *to resist* (dat.).  
 respondere (respons), *to answer* (dat.).  
 res-publica \*, *commonwealth.*

retinēre, *to retain.*  
 retūl-; see referre.  
 reus, *an accused person.*  
 revōcare, *to recall.*  
 rex, rēgis, *king.*  
 Rhenus, *the Rhine.*  
 Rhodānus, *the Rhone.*  
 ridēre (ris), *to laugh; to laugh at.*  
 rīgēre, *to be stiff; to be dried up.*  
 risus, ūs, *laughter.*  
 rob-ur, ūris, *strength.*  
 robustus, *strong.*  
 rōgare, *to ask.*  
 Roma, *Rome.*  
 Romanus, *Roman.*  
 rotundus, *round.*  
 rugire, *to roar.*  
 rure, *from the country.*  
 ruri, *in the country.*  
 rūs, *into the country.*

## S.

sacerd-os, ūtis, *priest.*  
 ūspe, *often.*  
 sagitta, *arrow.*  
 salsus, *salt.*  
 saltare, *to dance.*  
 saluber, *wholesome; salubrious.*  
 sanare, *to heal; to cure.*  
 sangu-is, ūnis, *blood.*  
 sapien-s, tis, *wise.*  
 sapientia, *wisdom.*  
 Sard-es, G. ium, *Sardes.*  
 satiare, *to satisfy* (with food, &c.).  
 satis, *enough.*  
 Saturnus, G. i, *Saturn.*  
 saxum, *rock, stone.*  
 sceletus, *wicked.*  
 sceptrum, *sceptre.*  
 scientia, *knowledge.*  
 scire, *to know.*  
 scribēre (scrips, script), *to write.*  
 scriptum, *a writing.*  
 secundum, *along; according to.*  
 secūt-, see sequi.  
 sed, *but.*  
 sedēre, *to sit.*

\* This word is really an *adjective* in agreement with *res*; and is so declined. Gen. *rei-publicæ.* Acc. *rem-publicam.*

seg-es, ἔτις, <i>crop.</i>	to be construed by 'top,' its subst. following in the gen.
sem-en, G. ἕνις, <i>seed.</i>	sumptus, ὑψ, <i>expense.</i>
semper, <i>always.</i>	super, <i>above</i> (see p. 87).
semipaternus, a, um, <i>eternal.</i>	superare, <i>to surpass; conquer.</i>
senect-us, ὀψ, <i>old age.</i>	supervacuus, <i>unnecessary; superfluous.</i>
sen-ex, G. οὐδ, <i>old man.</i> G. pl. um.	suppeditare, <i>to supply.</i>
sentire (sens), <i>to feel; perceive.</i>	supra, <i>above.</i>
sequi (secutus sum), <i>to follow.</i>	surdus, <i>deaf.</i>
sepelire, <i>to bury.</i>	suscipere (cep, cept), <i>to undertake.</i>
serēre (sēv, sāt), <i>to sow; plant.</i>	sustinēre, <i>to endure.</i>
serpen-s, tis, <i>a serpent; snake.</i>	suus, a, um, <i>his, hers (her), its; their (or his, &amp;c., own).</i>
serus, <i>late.</i>	Syracusæ, arum, <i>Syracuse.</i>
esse, the acc. of <i>sui</i> , doubled (see p. 41. 116.)—to be construed before an infin. 'that they.'	
servare, <i>to keep; observe.</i>	T.
servire, <i>to be the slave of (dat.).</i>	tacēre, <i>to be silent; hold one's tongue.</i>
servus, i, <i>slave.</i>	tam, <i>so.</i>
simp-ex, ἕσις, <i>simple.</i>	tamen, <i>yet, nevertheless.</i>
simulare, <i>to pretend.</i>	tantum, <i>only.</i>
simulati-o, ὄνις, <i>assumed appearance.</i>	tantus, <i>so great.</i>
similis, <i>like (dat.).</i>	tardus, <i>slow.</i>
sine, <i>without.</i>	taurus, <i>bull.</i>
sitire, <i>to be thirsty.</i>	temēre, <i>inconsiderately.</i>
sol, G. solis, <i>sun.</i>	tenēre (tenu), <i>to hold, restrain.</i>
solum, <i>only.</i>	terra, <i>earth.</i>
solus (G. οὐδ), <i>only, alone.</i>	terrenus, <i>belonging to the earth; earthly.</i>
somnus, <i>sleep.</i>	terrēre (terrū, territ), <i>to frighten.</i>
sonus, i, <i>sound.</i>	tegēre (tex, tect), <i>to cover.</i>
spargēre (spars), <i>to scatter.</i>	templum, <i>a temple.</i>
spectare, <i>to behold.</i>	temp-us, ὥρις, <i>time.</i>
sperare, <i>to hope for.</i>	tenus, <i>as far as; up to.</i>
spoliare, to rob (of), despoil, abl.	Thebæ, ἄρα, <i>Thebes.</i>
stabilit-as, ἔτις, <i>stability.</i>	timēre, <i>to fear.</i>
stare (stēt, stat), <i>to stand; to cost.</i>	timidus, <i>timid.</i>
statim, <i>immediately.</i>	Timoleon, ontis, <i>a man's name.</i>
stella, <i>star.</i>	tondeo (totond, tons), <i>to shear.</i>
studēre, <i>to devote oneself to; aim at (dat.).</i>	torquis, is, <i>chain (worn round the neck).</i>
studiose, <i>attentively.</i>	totus, a, um, G. ius, <i>whole.</i>
studiōsus, <i>very fond.</i>	trans, <i>across.</i>
studium, <i>eager pursuit; exertion, study.</i>	trans-ire, <i>to pass over (see eo, irreg. verb, p. 124).</i>
stultus, <i>foolish.</i>	trans-mittēre, <i>to cross.</i>
sub, <i>under.</i>	tres, tria, G. ium, <i>three.</i>
subire (sub-eo), <i>to undergo.</i>	triangulus, <i>a triangle.</i>
subvenire (vēn, vent), <i>to succour</i>	
succurrēre (curr, curs), <i>(dat.).</i>	tristis, <i>sad.</i>
sudare, <i>to be in a perspiration.</i>	
sumēre (sumps, sumpt), <i>to take.</i>	
summus, <i>highest, greatest.</i> Often	

Troja, *Troy* (a town in Asia Minor).  
 trunca, *trunk*.  
 tuli, &c. (see *fero*, irreg. verb, p. 123).  
 turpis, *disgraceful*.  
 tutus, *safe*.  
 tuus, *thy, your*.  
 tyrannus, *a tyrant*.

## U.

ubi, *where?*  
 allus (a, um ; G. ius), *any*.  
 ultra, *beyond*.  
 ultro, *voluntarily*.  
 unde, *whence*.  
 unquam, *ever*.  
 unus (a, um ; -G. Ius), *one*.  
 urbs, G. urbis, *city*.  
 ure (uss, ust), *to burn*.  
 ursus, i, *bear*.  
 usitatus, *customary* ; *familiar*.  
 usus, us, *use*, *advantage*.  
 ut, *that*.  
 uter, tra, trum (G. utrius), *which (of two)*.  
 uti (usus), *to use* (abl.).  
 utilis, *useful* ; *good for*.  
 utilitas, *usefulness*, *use*.  
 usque, *quite up to* ; *to*.  
 uva, *grape*.

## V.

vacare, *to have leisure* (dat.).  
 valen-s, tis, *strong*.  
 vapor, *vapour*.  
 vehementer, *vehemently*, *very much*.  
 velit (see *volo*, irreg. verb, p. 123).  
 velo-x, cis, *swift*.  
 venaticus, *belonging to hunting* ; canis venaticus, *a sporting dog* ; *a hound*.  
 venatum (sup.), *a hunting*.  
 vendere (vendid, vendit), *to sell*.  
 vēnire (vēn, vent), *to come*.  
 Venus, Veneris, *Venus*.

vere, *truly*.  
 vereri, *to fear* (veritus sum).  
 verum, *but*.  
 verus, *true*.  
 vespa, *wasp*.  
 vesper (vesperis), *the evening*.  
 vestis, is, f. *garment*.  
 via, *way* ; *road*.  
 vic-, *see vincere*.  
 vict-, *see vivere* or *vincere*.  
 victima, *victim*.  
 victor, ōris, *conqueror*.  
 victoria, *victory*.  
 victus, ūs, *food*.  
 victus (part. of *vincere*), *conquered*.  
 vīdere (vid, vis), *to see* : videri, *to be seen* ; (or more commonly) *to seem*.  
 vincēre (vic, vict), *to conquer*.  
 vincūlum, *chain*.  
 vindicare, *to avenge*.  
 vinum, *wine*.  
 violare, *to offend-against* ; *wrong* : *break* (a law).  
 vir, vīri, *a man*.  
 vires, G. ium, *strength*.  
 virtus, ūtis, *virtue*, *valour*.  
 vis, force, power (acc. tin ; abl. vi : plur. vires, virium, &c. reg.)  
 vis, 2nd sing. of *volo*, irreg. verb.  
 vita, *life*.  
 vitare, *to avoid*.  
 vitium, *vice*.  
 vitreus, adj. of *glass*.  
 vituperare, *to censure* ; *find fault with*.  
 vivēre (vix, vict), *to live*.  
 vix, *scarcely*.  
 vix-, *see vivere*.  
 vocare, *to call*, *to invite*.  
 volo (irreg. verb, p. 123), am  
*willing* ; *wish*.  
 volunt-as, ātis, *will*.  
 volupt-as, ātis, *pleasure*.  
 vox, G. vocis, *voice*.  
 vuln-us, ēris, *wound*.  
 vulp-es, is, *a fox*.

THE END.

GILBERT &amp; RIVINGTON, Printers, St. John's Square, London.

**CLASSICAL WORKS BY THE LATE REV. T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.**  
 Arranged under Numbers for progressive Tuition.

LATIN.	Edition.	Price.
1. Henry's First Latin Book.....	16	3s. 0d.
Second Latin Book, and Practical Grammar .....	8	4 0
2. { First Verse Book .....	7	2 0
Part II. (additional Exercises) .....	2	1 0
Historiæ Antiquar. Epitome .....	7	4 0
3. { Eclogæ Ovidianæ, Part I. (Elegiac Poems) .....	10	2 6
Part II. (Metamorphoses).....	1	5 0
Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part I. ....	12	6 6
Cornelius Nepos, with Critical Questions and Imitative Exercises .....	4	4 0
4. { VIRGILII ÆNEIS, Lib. I—VI., with copious Latin Notes .....	1	12 0
(Dübner) complete .....	1	6 0
HORACE, with English Notes.....	1	7 0
Practical Introduction to Latin Verse Composition .....	3	5 6
Gradus Novus Anticlepticus .....	1	12 0
<b>SELECTIONS FROM CICERO, WITH ENGLISH NOTES.</b> Part I.		
(Orations: the Fourth against Verres; the Orations against Catiline, and for the Poet Archias).....	2	4 0
Part II.		
(Epistles, arranged in the order of time; with accounts of the Consuls, events of each year, &c.) .....	1	5 0
Part III. (The Tusculan Disputations) .....	1	5 6
Part IV. (De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum)		
with Notes by the Rev. J. Beaven, D.D.....	1	5 6
Part V. (De Senectute) with English Notes		
by the Rev. H. Browne, M.A. ....	1	2 6
TACITUS, Part I. (Annales, Lib. I—VI.) with English Notes from Nipperdey .....	1	6 0
Part II. (Annales, Lib. XI—XVI.) Nipperdey .....	1	5 0
SALLUST: Jugurthine War, with English Notes, Jacobs.....	1	3 6
ECLOGÆ HISTORICÆ; or, Selections from the Roman Historians,—Cæsar, Sallust, Livy, Curtius, Tacitus .....	1	4 0
Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part II....	4	8 0
Longer Latin Exercises, Part I. ....	3	4 0
Part II. ....	1	4 0
Grotefend's Materials for Translation into Latin .....	3	7 6
 <b>GREEK.</b>		
First Greek Book .....	4	5 0
Second Greek Book .....	1	5 6
Third Greek Book (from Xenophon's Cyropaedia) with English Notes .....	1	3 6
Fourth Greek Book (Xenophon's Anabasis, Books IV—VII.)		
with English Notes .....	1	4 0
Xenophon's Anabasis complete, with English Notes .....	1	6 6
Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence .....	6	5 6
Greek Prose Composition .....	9	5 6
Part II. ....	1	6 6
Greek Construing .....	1	6 6
Greek Grammar (for the higher Forms) .....	2	10 6
Elementary Greek Grammar .....	1	5 0
The same, with an Account of the Greek Dialects .....	1	6 0
The Dialects separately.....	1	1 6
DEMOS- { a) The Olynthiac Orations ... with English Notes	2	3 0
{ b) The Oration on the Crown. } and Grammatical	2	4 6
THENES { c) The Philippic Orations ... References .....	2	4 0
ÆSCHINES.—Oration against Ctesiphon, with English Notes...	1	4 0
HOMERI { a) Complete Edition .....	2	12 0
{ b) Lib. I—IV., with Critical Introduction... .....	2	7 6
{ c) Lib. I—III., with English Notes, for Beginners. ....	2	3 6
THUCYDIDES { Book First } with English Notes .....	1	5 6
{ Book Second } .....	1	4 6

\* \* The complete List containing the Editions of the Greek Dramatists and other Educational Works by the same Editor, may be had from the Publishers.

RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE, PALL MALL.



SCHOOL BOOKS PUBLISHED BY SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.

- Guy's (Joseph) School CIPHERING Book;  
New edition, post 4to. 3s. 6d. half-bound.
- Guy's (Joseph) School Question Book;  
With Chart of History. 11th edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. roan.
- Guy's (Joseph, Jun.) Exercises in Orthography;  
18th edition, 18mo. 1s. cloth.
- Guy's (Joseph, Jun.) English School Grammar,  
16th edition with Improvements. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.
- Guy's (Joseph, Jun.) Learner's Poetic Task Book;  
4th edition, 18mo. 1s. cloth.
- Hewlett's (now Mrs. Copley) Modern Speaker;  
Selections in Prose and Verse. 4th edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d. roan.
- Hodgkin's Sketch of the Greek Accidence;  
2nd Edition, 8vo. 2s. 6d. sewed.
- Jacobs' (Professor) Latin Reader. Part I.  
With Notes, 18th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth (Simpkin & Co.)
- Jacobs' Latin Reader. Part II.  
With Notes, 10th Edition. 12mo. 3s. cloth.
- Jacob's (Rev. G. A.) Bromsgrove Latin Grammar;  
4th Edition, 12mo. 5s. cloth.  
Also an Edition abridged for Beginners. 12mo. 1s. 3d. cloth.
- Jacob's (Rev. G. A.) Bromsgrove Greek Grammar;  
3rd Edition, 12mo. 7s. cloth.
- Jacob's (Rev. G. A.) Elementary Greek Grammar;  
2nd Edition. 12mo. 2s. cloth.
- Jones' Theory and Practice of Notes of Lessons;  
For the Use of Teachers, etc. 2nd Edition. 12mo. 2s. cloth.
- Jordan's Art of German Writing;  
In a Set of easy Copies for Students. New Edition, oblong, 1s. 6d. sewed.
- Joyce's Scientific Dialogues; by J. H. Pepper.  
Containing Dr. Gregory and Mr. C. V. Walker's improvements. New Edit. with the recent additions to Science, by J. H. Pepper. Fcp. 5s. cl.
- A Companion to the Scientific Dialogues;  
With Questions, &c. Fcp. 2s. 6d. cloth.
- Lebahn's Self Instructor—Readings in German,  
12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.
- Lebahn's German Language, in One Volume.  
6th edition. Square 12mo. 8s. cloth, or with Key, 10s. 6d.
- Lebahn's Key to the Exercises in the above;  
(Separately) Square 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth sewed.
- Le Breton's French Scholar's First Book;  
A Grammar, Vocabulary, and Phrases, 12th edit. 12mo. 3s. cloth.
- Le Nouveau Testament;  
Large print, stereotype, for Schools. 12mo. 3s. 6d. roan (Simpkin & Co.)
- Mair's Tyro's Dictionary of the Latin Language,  
Remodelled by George Ferguson, A.M. 12mo. 7s. roan.
- Martinelli's Italian-French&French-Italian Dictionary,  
Abridged from Alberti's, by Santagnello. 7th edit. 1 vol. 9s. roan.

SCHOOL BOOKS PUBLISHED BY SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.

Nowell's Latin Catechism. 18mo. 3s. cloth.

Phædri Augusti Liberti Fabulæ Æsopiæ,

Ad Editionem Schwabii. pœne descriptæ. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cl. (Simpkin.)

Phædrus' Fables Construed,

For the use of Grammar Schools. 12mo. 8s. cloth.

Pike's New English Spelling Book;

Containing every English Radical Word in Modern Use. New Edit. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Pinnock's Grammar of Modern Geography;

With Maps, Views, and Costumes. 18mo. 5s. 6d. roan.

Pinnock's Grammar of Ancient Geography;

With Maps, Views and Costumes. 18mo. 4s. 6d. roan.

Pinnock's Grammar of Sacred Geography & History;

With Maps, Views, Costumes, etc. 18mo. 4s. 6d. roan.

Pinnock's Grammar of the English Language;

With Questions and Exercises. 9th edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. roan.

Schmid's (C. Von) Series of Tales for Children.

Translated by the Rev. R. C. Hales, Oxon. Intended as a Reading Book for Schools, 2nd Edition. Fcap. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Schrevelius' Lexicon (Valpy's) Greek and English,

With many New Words. Edit. by Dr. Major. 9th edit. 8vo. 10s. 6d. cl.

Taylor's System of Stenography,

Or Short-Hand Writing. New edit. by Cooke. Fcp. 2s. cloth; 3s. 6d. roan.

Thrower's Questions in Arithmetic;

New edition. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Answers to the Above.

8vo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

White's Tutor's Expeditious Assistant;

With copious Notes. 4th edit. 12mo. 2s. cl.

White's Elucidation of the Tutor's Assistant.

12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

White's Practical System of Mental Arithmetic;

With many useful Tables. 4th edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Wilcke's Easiest and Quickest Method of acquiring

a Correct French and Italian Pronunciation. 2nd Edition, 12mo. 2s. bd.

Williams' Preceptor's Assistant;

Or, Questions in General History, Literature, and Science. New edition, enlarged with plates, 12mo. 5s. roan.

Williams' Parent's Catechism :

An Easy Introduction to General Knowledge. With Cuts, 18mo. 3s. cl.

Wilson's (S.) Geography Simplified.

3rd Edition, corrected and improved, 18mo. 8s., bound.

Yeates' Concise Hebrew Grammar.

7th Edition, by the Rev. F. Biallobotzky, Ph.D. Roy. 8vo. 5s. cloth.

